สีราฬาราๆาฬิสำฐีสาริๆ

Manual of Authentic Tibetan

Tenzin Choephel Klara Hendrychova

จีราฐรารๆาสสาฐีจาริจา Manual of Authentic Tibetan Author: Tenzin Choephel

© Thosamling Nunnery YOL Cantt Road, Siddpur, Dharamsala Himachal Pradesh, INDIA

First Published: 2018

No part of this work may be reproduced or copied in any form by any means graphics, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping or information and retrieval systems—without written permission of the author and Thosamling Nunnery.

ISBN: 978-93-5288-882-5

Print House Address Sarah Printer, Near College for Higher Tibetan Studies Sarah, Dharamsala Distt. Kangra, H.P. – 176213



Thösamling Nunnery Institute for International Buddhists Women



Acknowledgement

Thosamling is an International Buddhist Nunnery and Institute established in 2001 and based in Sidhpur, Himachal Pradesh. Among other activities we are organizing Tibetan Language - and Buddhist Philosophy Courses. Tenzin Choephel, our Tibetan teacher, was inspired to make a Tibetan Language book for Thosamling. In cooperation with Klara Hendrychova, an English teacher from the Czech Republic, we are happy to be able to present it now and to make it available for a wide public. Thosamling is wishing Tenzin Choephel all the best with his studies in the Oxford University in England. We are grateful for his contribution for Thosamling and his willingness to share his knowledge of the Tibetan language with all of us and our students. We would like to thank Klara Hendrychova for her English translation and her vision to make this book effective as teaching material for foreign students. We special want to thank Ngawang Tsundue from Sarah College for his proof reading. Our long term friend Jo de Leon (Karma Yeshe) we would to thank for her funny drawings. She is known as an excellent Thanka painter and great artist, please have a look at her website karmayeshe.art@gmail.com Many more people were involved in the process and we would like to thank them all for their contribution and dedication to make it possible to publish this book. We hope and have the sincere wish that this book will benefit many students by understanding and learning the Tibetan Language and continue to study the Dharma in a profound way.

Tenzin Sangmo

"This textbook introduces the beginner to modern colloquial Tibetan. The lessons and exercises are based on everyday situations that the speaker will encounter in real life. The exercises are fun, and the grammar sections are complemented with explanations of Tibetan culture and customs. Whether for self-study or for learning in group, this is a delightful book that will swiftly bring you to reasonable speaking level."

(Professor of Tibetan and Himalayan Studies, University of Oxford)

लु'न्या'यावनः Janet Shimmin यहिरुयाया मुयार्था हे के लु क्रु भेवा। ।।

ਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑੑਗ਼ੑੑੑੑਸ਼ੑਸ਼੶ਫ਼ੑਸ਼੶ਫ਼ੑੑੑੑੑਖ਼ੑੑਫ਼ੑਖ਼ੑੑਗ਼ੑਫ਼ਗ਼ੑੑਗ਼ਖ਼੶ਖ਼ਗ਼ੑਗ਼ਖ਼੶ਫ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਸ਼੶ਫ਼ੑਗ਼ਸ਼੶ਜ਼ਸ਼੶ਫ਼ਗ਼ਸ਼੶ਖ਼ਗ਼ਖ਼ੑਫ਼ਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਖ਼ੑੑਸ਼੶ਸ਼ੑਸ਼ਗ਼ਖ਼੶ਜ਼ਫ਼ਗ਼ੑੑਫ਼ਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਖ਼ਖ਼ਸ਼੶ਸ਼ਸ਼ਸ਼੶ਸ਼ੑਸ਼੶ਖ਼ੑੑਫ਼੶ਖ਼ੑਗ਼੶ ਫ਼੶ਫ਼ਗ਼੶ਗ਼ਸ਼ਫ਼੶ਸ਼ਗ਼ਫ਼੶੶ਸ਼ਫ਼੶ਫ਼ਖ਼੶ਫ਼ਖ਼ਫ਼ਗ਼ਫ਼੶ਗ਼ਫ਼੶ਗ਼ਫ਼ਗ਼ਫ਼ਗ਼ਫ਼੶ਫ਼੶ਗ਼ਸ਼੶ਸ਼੶ਫ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਸ਼੶ਖ਼੶੶

ભગમાં ક્રેંદ ક્ષે લેન બદ્ ના નને નવે સાન ભાગ કે ના માં તેના ગાન ભાગ છે.

য়৾৾৾৾৾ঀ৾৾৾ঀ৾৾৾

ABOUT THIS TEXTBOOK

WHO IS THIS BOOK AIMED AT?

This book is designed for students who wish to learn Tibetan language. It is specifically aimed at those who start learning the language from the very beginning.

HOW IS THE BOOK ORGANIZED?

The main textbook is divided into several parts according to the importance of presented topics. Since the Tibetan alphabet is the first key step to learning Tibetan language, it is placed at the beginning of the book. It is organized in Two Sections – the Alphabet followed by Word Formation. Once the students learn how to write and read, they can proceed to the first lesson called Welcome to the Class which teaches the fundamentals of the Tibetan language as well as most common phrases. Upon completion of this introductory lesson, the book presents Two Units which are each further divided into 4 comprehensive lessons (η [η η ς].) ordered from the easiest topics to more challenging ones.

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK?

Clear instructions are given throughout the book. In Units 1 and 2, it is advised to learn the vocabulary and phrases - placed at the beginning of each lesson - before actually moving to the main text. Topics for lessons were carefully chosen in order to teach most frequent vocabulary, expressions and vital grammar points from the easiest to harder ones. At the end of each lesson, exercises aimed at what has been taught are given. While the textbook's exercises are oriented mainly at practicing speaking, exercises in the workbook place emphasis on writing skills.

Please note that the pronunciation in square brackets [] was transcribed according to the (standard) Lhasa accent.

WORKBOOK

In order to practice skills learned in the main textbook, students are advised to use the workbook. Organized in the same manner as the textbook, it is very easy to use. Exercises in the workbook are clearly arranged according to the parts in the main textbook.

No answer key is provided since all the answers can be found in the main textbook.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

The main textbook as well as workbook use many standardized abbreviations. Here is their list arranged in alphabetical order:

(H) (C) (L)	honorific language olloquial language literary language
aff.	affirmative
arch.	archaic
fut.	future
lit.	literally
neg.	negative
pl.	plural
pos.	positive
sg.	singular
sone	someone
sth	something

n.	noun
pron.	pronoun
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
V.	verb

Since 2003, Thosamling Nunnery and Institute for International Buddhist Women has been providing Tibetan Language courses for nuns, monks and lay practitioners. The main aim is to expand opportunities for in-depth study of Tibetan Buddhist philosophy as well as preparing students with conversational level understanding and usage of the Tibetan language. Some students continue their studies in Tibetan monastic institutions; others become translators for Tibetan teachers in their home countries.

The name THOSAMLING was given to the community by His Holiness the Dalai Lama and means a place of study and reflection. We are an international community of nuns and lay practitioners living and studying within the Tibetan Buddhist Tradition. We are a nonsectarian community drawing inspiration from all four schools of Tibetan Buddhism. Our location in the quiet fields at the foot of the spectacular Himalaya Mountains places us close to significant teachers from all four Buddhist lineages. Our peaceful serene nunnery and institute is an ideal setting in which to pursue studies of Tibetan language and the Dharma.

Our main focus is to support the growth and flourishing of Dharma throughout the world by providing opportunities to listen to, reflect on and study the teachings of the Buddha in a nonsectarian way. By providing a place of refuge for newly ordained nuns we give them the firm grounding in the study and practice they need. By nurturing and supporting the Sangha we in turn create a community that inspires others to practice Dharma for the benefit of all.

As part of our commitment we provide a Tibetan Language Program for the ordained as well as lay people. This study also opens one of the few doorways which is interpreting and translating. Our program is designed to give students a complete training~ starting from the alphabet, learning colloquial Tibetan and then gradually moving on to understanding Buddhist teachings and reading philosophical texts.

In order to launch students into a successful education of Tibetan Language, Thosamling invested in the production of a Tibetan language book and workbook specifically geared.

The Manual of Authentic Tibetan, for our classes here. It is structured to foster rapid advancement in speaking, writing, reading, and comprehension skills using culturally accurate and appropriate examples and text. Using text book and partner workbook, students will easily be able to follow colloquial usage in the classroom as well as have practice assignments to help them advance quickly. The design of the book is to cultivate appreciation and enjoyment of both Tibetan language and culture.

The purpose of this book is to help not only Thosamling but students all around the world to establish a solid basis in Tibetan language, be able to speak Tibetan conversantly, and to provide a foundation to read Buddhist texts in the future. This beautiful new text book and workbook will help the students grasp the most important basics of literal as well as colloquial language in order to be able to write in Tibetan and communicate with confidence with native Tibetan speakers.

Tibetan Alphabet



Section 1

र्श्वे कंतु न्दर में

- 1) The Thirty Consonants নামন্য ব্রিস জ্বামান্ত্র
- 2) The Four Vowels ব্রুক্রা বর্ণী
- 3) The Three Superscripts and the Four Subscripts ঝর্যা তির শাস্ত্র আর্ম ব্য নির্বা
 - 3 A) The Three Superscripts ঝর্ণা ডির শাধ্যমা
 - The Twelve Superscripts "Ra" ন্যেন্সিন্ত্র্যান্ট্রন্য
 - ll) The Ten Superscripts "La" অফার্ন্যান্তা
 - III) The Eleven Superscripts "Sa" ঝাঝার্যা বস্তু বাৃত্তীবা
 - 3 B) The Four Subscripts বর্ন বিশ্ব স্বর্জনেরী
 - The Seven Subscripts "Ya" আবদ্বাধাবন্ত্রা
 - The Thirteen Subscripts "Ra" גיבקקאיבעירע לאון
 - III) The Six Subscripts "La" অ'নচন্মার্য
 - IV) The Thirteen Subscripts "Wa Sur" স্থার্ম বর্ত্বাধ্যমা
 - 3 C) Single Syllable with a Superscript and a Subscript अर्वे पर्दे गुरू सेन्द्र गुरू से उत्र श्री थे गे।
- 4) Summary Sheet
- 5) Pronunciation Summary

1) The Thirty Consonants স্মন্দ্র ব্র্যান্ত্র

As you already know, the Tibetan alphabet consists of 30 consonants.

The lines on the top and the bottom of the transliteration show high and low tones respectively. Pay close attention to your teacher's pronunciation and repeat the consonants the same way he says them.

۳ ka ¹	kha الم	ন <u>ga</u>	5 'nga
रु। са	هر cha	<u> 5j ja</u>	s n <u>ya</u>
ب ا ta	म tha	קו <u>da</u>	ना <u>na</u>
rı pa	ry pha	ק <u>ba</u>	म् <u>ma</u>
र्ज tsa	æj tsha	f d <u>za</u>	<u>क्षाwa</u>
هاz <u>ha</u>	a za	rq <u>'a</u>	wj ya
r ra	ay la_	sha	sa sa
Ι		() Sha	sil su

The Tibetan consonants are traditionally divided into five gender groups depending on how much effort needs to be put into their pronunciation. That is how the following gender categories were established:

Masculine	ইন্	শাতাদাতা
Neuter	मन्त्र	ן'זאידידי איז
Feminine	عراً	ฦๅ๚ๅ๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚
Very Feminine	भीव फुः सें।	<u> ন'ঙ</u> 'ব'মা
Sub-Feminine	র্র্যান্দ্রপর্মা	7.a.5.wl
-		

^{1.} This chart shows the traditional **transliteration** which you can commonly find in written texts.

Unfortunately, the genders do not take the tones into account. So for simpler demonstration, have a look at the table and the Key to Pronunciation below. Colors will show you which groups have the same tone, and whether they are aspirated or non-aspirated.

गु [.] [ka] ²	م. [kha]	শ'[<u>kha]</u>	רֹז <u>[nga]</u>
रु [.] [cha]	æ [.] [chha]	天·[chha]	3/[<u>nya]</u>
ᠭ:[ta]	त्र [.] [tha]	٦ [·] [tha]	न् <u>[[na]</u>
۲: [pa]	ন [pha]	ন'[pha]	रा[<u>ma]</u>
र्ज'[tsa]	æ [ts'ha]	£`[ts'ha]	꿕[wa]
ৰে'[sha]	ੜ'[sa]	द'[ah]	ષ્પા[ya]
ج:[<u>ra]</u>	ন্য'[la]	۹'[shha]	الع
5 ^{·[ha]}	هر[[a]		

Key to Pronunciation

Color	Tone	Pronunciation	Root Sound	Consonants	Gender
	High tone	Non-aspirated	ন্দ্রা	শান্ত'দ'ৰ্ম্বা	Masculine र्वे
				জ্য	Sub-Feminine র্রিশ্বাপব্যা
	High tone	Strongly aspirated	হা	৸ঊয়য়৾	Neuter बांदेन्
				51	Sub-Feminine র্রি'ন্যাপৃন্যা
		Aspirated		~9.21J	Feminine ន័័្
	Low tone	Aspirated	ط	ਗ਼ੑਞ੶ੑੑੑੑੑ੶ਲ਼੶ਞੑਁ੶ਖ਼੶ੑੑੑੑੑੑਫ਼੶ਖ਼੶੶ਗ਼	Feminine តិ័្យ
				<u>২</u> :লা	Sub-Feminine র্রান্সপৃষ্ণ
	Low tone	Non-aspirated/ nasal	শ	<i>ઽઃૹૢઃ</i> ૡૢૻઃ૱ٳ	Very Feminine श्वेत्र;हुःबेंग्

*⊯*Exercises S1.P1.E1-E6

^{2.} This chart shows the way of **pronouncing** the thirty consonants. For better distinction between the transliteration and pronunciation forms, the pronunciation in this textbook is always mentioned in [].

How to Write

The writing style in which your textbook is written is called ५५७७६२ [u-chen]. "U-chen" literally means "those with a head", meaning the consonants having a top line. It is an equivalent to block letters and it is the most commonly used type of writing.

You should also know the most important punctuation markers in Tibetan language:

","	ळेंग [tshek']	is used to separate syllables or words
","	ઢેગપ્લન્ [chhik shhe]	is used as a marker for full stop (.) or comma (,)
"[["	કેશ્વન્ [nyi shhe]	In prose, it marks the end of a section serving as a full stop (.) In verse texts, it is always written at the end of each line
"[[[["	ત્રલે બન્ન [shi shhe]	is used at the end of a chapter or an entire work
"@90 "	ŵন্মর্ম্মর্ [yik' ng'go]	marks the beginning of a text or page

Exceptions: We never write a $q_{\overline{1}}$ (j) after $\eta \eta \eta q$ because their "legs" already count as one. Therefore, in a verse text instead of finishing the line with j, they will be only followed by one j etc. Have a look at the example, verse by the 6th Dalai Lama.

```
ลิ ) กิขาสุลาสานการ์ กา
```

```
ગણુઃજ્ઞુદ્ર સેચર્ચ પાસ ર્જ્ઞા
```

```
ฏผสานนิ พลานส์ สรานก
```

```
ଽୖୖୖୖ୶ୢୖୄଈ୕ୄୢୖୢଈୖୄ୷ୄୖୄଌ<sup>ୖ</sup>ୖୄଈୖ୲୷ୄଽ୳ୗୗ
```

Also, letter ج has to be separated from a ٩٢ () with a هُمْ (). e.g. ٢٢

You can practice your writing skills in the Workbook. *K* Workbook S1.P2.E1

2) The Four Vowels 555-87-56

In this section we will learn the four vowels લે_[લાુ લે_[લાં["**I, U, E, O**".

Pronouncing the Tibetan vowels isn't difficult. Look at the equivalent pronunciation in English:

ها	Ι	as in	"p ee r", "r ea l", " ea r", etc.
ঙ্গা	U	as in	"b u sh", "p u sh", "p u t", etc.
ષો	Е	as in	"p a y", "s a y", "m a y", etc.
र्वेष	0	as in	"m o re", "d o or", " o range", etc.

Spelling

Spelling may not seem very important to you but it actually plays a key role in your reading skills. Remember, the more you practice spelling words, the more fluent you will be in reading in no time.

জ	ľ +	गी'गु'	=>	શ્રેષ	$\begin{bmatrix} a + khi khu \end{bmatrix}$	=>	I
জ	ľ +	ৰ্নশ'স্টু'	=>	ঙ্খা	$\begin{bmatrix} a + shab \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \end{bmatrix}$	=>	U
জ	ľ +	प्सो <u>र</u> -सॅ-	=>	ઓ	[a + ng'dreng po]	=>	Е
জ	" +	व [.] र्रे.	=>	Ŵ	$\begin{bmatrix} a + na ro \end{bmatrix}$	=>	0

∞ Workbook S1.P3.E1-E3 and S1.P4.E1

3) The Three Superscripts and The Four Subscripts

ผส์โ ้อสาๆผูมารราวรั้ๆพาอสาวติ

In order to distinguish differences in spoken as well as in written language, different kinds of spelling exist in the Tibetan language. That is why some consonants serve as superscripts or subscripts for certain root letters.

A) The Three Superscripts ঝর্না তর নাধ্যমা

The three superscripts are Training

Each of these superscripts can only be combined with certain consonants. With a superscripts, some of the consonants change in sound and tone:

Masculine letters keep the tone of the original root letter (represented by \rightarrow)

Feminine letters acquire lower tone than the original letter carries (represented by \checkmark)

Very feminine letters acquire higher tone than the original letter carries (represented by \uparrow)

		masculine শাত্তদাৰ্য	→
superscript ন'না'মা'	+	feminine ག་རྲོ་ག་རྲོ་	V
		very feminine দায়ন্বাৰা	1

The three superscripts are divided into three groups:

l) The Twelve Superscripts "Ra" ন্যের্ণান্ত্র্যান্ট্র্য

II) The Eleven Superscripts "La" অমনী নত্ত্ব

III) The Eleven Superscripts "Sa" พาพที่ เจรู ๆธิๆ

Let's have a look at each of them in detail.

I) The Twelve Superscripts "Ra" সমেন্সিমা

Consonant τ (ra) can only work as a superscript for the following 12 consonants:

ना	ব্য	Ę	Ę	कु	ह	Ę	₹	5	₹ſ	₹	Ę
rKa	rGa	rNga	rJa	rNya	rTa	rDa	rNa	rBa	rMa	rTsa	rDza

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with the Superscript "Ra". Notice the **change** of <u>pronunciation</u> as well as <u>tone</u> in certain cases. Arrows $\uparrow \checkmark$ signify that the tone of the root syllable has to be even higher or lower than the basic letter carries.

শা	<u>ন:</u> + শ্ব: + নচনাৰ্য ^{,3}	=	제	$[ra + ka + tak^{4'}]$	=>	[ka]	→
শা	শ্. + শ. + শ্রদ্যাশ্ব.	=	শা	[ra + kha + tak']	=>	[ga]	↓
ΞĮ	ম: + ম: + সদস্যাম্বা	=	E	[ra + nga + tak']	=>	[nga]	Υ
ĘĮ	ন: + দ্র: + বদ্রশাধ্য	=	Ę	[ra + cha + tak']	=>	[ja]	¥
T	ন্: + ৪: + নদন্দাম.	=	कु	[ra + nya + tak']	=>	[nya]	♠
ন্টা	ন্: + দৃ: + বদবাধ্য:	=	ৰ	[ra + ta + tak']	=>	[ta]	→
ร	ন: + ন্ + নদন্দ্রাশ্ব:	=	শ	[ra + tha + tak']	=>	[da]	¥
ৰা	ন্: + ব্: + বদন্ধ	=	বা	[ra + na + tak']	=>	[na]	♠
শ	ন্: + ন: + নদন্শ	=	5	[ra + pha + tak']	=>	[ba]	¥
ক্ষা	শ্ব: + ঝ' + মচনাঝ'	=	হা	[ra + ma + tak']	=>	[ma]	↑
3	ন: + র্ড: + নচনাশ্ব	=	ব	[ra + tsa + tak']	=>	[tsa]	→
	ম + র্ই' + মদুন্দাশ্ব'	=		$[\underline{ra} + \underline{ts'ha} + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[dza]	↓

Workbook S1.P5.E1 & E2

II) The Ten Superscripts "La" অঅর্থানিত্তা

Consonant ar (la) can only serve as a superscript when combined with the following 10 consonants:

			ୟ' +	⊦ गाःमाः≍ःर	5.2.2.2.2	ı [.]			
द् <u>यां</u>	त्र	હ્યું	હ્યું		di.	ar.	or .	संग	ar Ar
ΙКа	lGa	ĪNga	ĪCa	IJa	ITa	lDa	ĪPa	lBa	Lha

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with the Superscript "La". It is the same pattern we used with the superscript "Ra". Again, notice the **change** of <u>pronunciation</u> as well as <u>tone</u>.

^{3.} বদ্যাঝ means "attached". While spelling, you are basically saying "when ग is attached to ৼ, it's স্বা"

^{4. [}tak'] the apostrophe here signifies that the consonant "k" isn't pronounced clearly

2 1	ন্থ: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাধ্য:	=		$\begin{bmatrix} 1a + \overline{ka} + \overline{tak'} \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[ka]	→
277	ন্দ + শ- + শচনাশ-	=	यम	$\begin{bmatrix} la + kha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[ga]	¥
ন্থা	র্ণ + ন: + নচনার্শ	=	ন্থা	[la + nga + tak']	=>	[nga]	↑
ि सु	ম + ড. + মদদার্শ	=	28	$\begin{bmatrix} la + cha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[cha]	→
al a	র্ম + হ. + সদস্য	=		$\begin{bmatrix} 1a + chha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[ja]	V
स्र	ম্ম + দৃ: + নদ্বনাৰ্থ	=	and the second se	$\begin{bmatrix} la + ta + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[ta]	→
শ্বা	র্ম + ন্. + বদ্র্যাশ্ব	=	3	$\begin{bmatrix} la + tha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[da]	V
2	ম + ম + মদন্ম	=	and the second s	$\begin{bmatrix} la + pa + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[pa]	↑
स्त	র্ম + ন' + নদন্দ্র্বার্থ	=	स्त	$\begin{bmatrix} la + pha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[ba]	V
3	ন্দ + স্? + সদৃশ্ব	=		$\begin{bmatrix} la + ha + tak' \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[lHa]	1

Workbook S1.P6.E1&E2

III) The Eleven Superscripts "Sa" ঝাঝার্বা নার্ডাবার্টবা

Consonant sr(sa) can only serve as a superscript when combined with the following 11 consonants:

```
श + गामामहाहाहादायामाखाउँ
```

۶ĩ.	X 7	¥.	જ્યું.	N.	ξŗ.	ki o	Ň	A.	X.	\$ <u>5</u>
sKa	sGa	sNga	sNya	sTa	sDa	sNa	sPa	sBa	sMa	sTsa

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with the Superscript "Sa". It is the same pattern as we use with the superscript "Ra" and "La". Again, notice the **change** of <u>pronunciation</u> as well as <u>tone</u>.

刹	শ্ব: + শ্ব:+ বদ্বশৃশ্ব:	=	케	$[\overline{s'ha} + \overline{ka} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	$[\overline{ka}]$	→
2	শ্ব: + শ্ব:+ নদৃশৃশ্ব:	=	2	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{kha} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[ga]	V
<u>گا</u>	শ্ব: + ম:+ মদন্যাশ্ব:	=	শ্ব	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{nga} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[nga]	1

z	শ্ব: + ৪:+ নদন্দাশ	=	쿿	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{nya} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[nya]	1
R	শ + দ + বদশশ	=		$[\overline{s'ha} + \overline{ta} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[ta]	→
শ্বা	শ্ব: + স্:+ বদন্ধাশ্ব:	=	শ	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{tha} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[da]	•
শ্ব	শ্ব: + ব্:+ বদন্শশ	=	শ্ব	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{na} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[na]	1
21	শ্ব: + শ্ব:+ মচনাশ্ব:	=	1	$[\overline{s'ha} + \overline{pa} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[pa]	→
到	শ্ব: + ব:+ বচুবাশ্ব:	=	3	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{pha} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[ba]	V
*	শ্ব: + শ্ব:+ নচনাশ্ব:	=	N	$[\overline{s'ha} + \underline{ma} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[ma]	1
3	শ্ব: + হ্র:+ মচনাধ্য:	=	S.	$[\overline{s'ha} + \overline{tsa} + \overline{tak'}] =>$	[tsa]	→

*∝*Exercises S1.P7.E1&E2

B) The Four Subscripts এই নামাডর নারী

In this section we will cover the Four Subscripts which are:

Sound	Subscript	Name	Pronunciation
દ્ય.	V	অ'বদগ্ৰশ	[ya tak']
ج:	7	ন:নদশ্বশ	[ra tak']
या.	QI	<i>অ</i> 'নদন্যশ্বা	[la tak']
स.	4	સ.ર્વેપ	[wa sur]

In writing, the four subsripts are attached to particular root letter. In some cases, a change on pronunciation and tone occurs. These changes will be discussed in detail in each of the four categories, which are:

- I) The Seven Subscripts "Ya" অ'নদৃশ্ঝ'ন5্র্ II) The Thirteen Subscripts "Ra" ম'নদৃশ্ঝ'নত্ত'শৃধ্যুঝা III) The Six Subscripts "La" অ'নদৃশ্ঝ'র্শ IV) The Thirteen "Wa Sur" স্ন'র্ম'নত্ত'শৃধ্যুঝা

1) The Seven Subscripts "Ya" আব্দ্যব্যাস্যন্ত্রা

Consonant extra can only serve as a subscript of the following 7 consonants:

गानिजान्तरास्र + था

<u>بل</u> .	S .	ŦĴ.	ଞ"[cha]	ଞ"[chha]	ସ୍ତ୍ର:[cha]	ଞ୍"[nya]
kya	khya	gya	руа	phya	bya	mya

Pronunciation

The pronunciation changes significantly with the following consonants:

		Lhasa Accent	Other	
হ্য	is pronounced as	[kya]	[tya]	
	is pronounced as	[khya]	[thya]	
Ð	is pronounced as	[khya]	[thya]	
51	is pronounced as	ন্থ	[tya]	
শ্র	is pronounced as	ത്ര		
হা	is pronounced as	ξ١		
ন্থা	is pronounced as	31		_

Spelling

Look at the way we spell the consonants with Subscripts "Ya":

IJ	শ্য + অ + বদ্বাশ্ব	=	IJ	$[\overline{ka} + ya + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[kya/tya]	→
S	মি + মে + বদন্ধি	=	ß	$[\overline{kha} + \underline{ya} + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[khya/thya]	→
E)	শ + অ + বদন্ম	=	Ð	$[\underline{kha} + \underline{ya} + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[khya/thya]	→
51	ন্য + অ + নদন্দাশ	=	51	$[\overline{\text{pa}} + ya + \overline{\text{tak}'}]$	=>	[cha]	→
5	শ + শ + নদন্শ	=	31	$[\overline{\text{pha}} + ya + \overline{\text{tak}'}]$	=>	[chha]	→
3	ন + ৬. + ২৫মারু	=	হা	$[\underline{pha} + \underline{ya} + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[chha]	→
শ্র্যা	ম + ম + ২৮১৯.	=	স্থা	$[\underline{\text{ma}} + \underline{\text{ya}} + \overline{\text{tak}'}]$	=>	[nya]	→

*∝*Workbook S1.P8.E1 & E2

II) The Thirteen Subscripts "Ra" ব্যব্যব্য বস্তু ব্যব্যুক্ষা

Consonant π can only serve as a subscript to the following 13 consonants:

गामिया मुझ्द्व संस्य मास भाषा मा म

	ন	শ্বি	म्त	হ	ġ	ห้	हां	<i>Щ</i> .	¥.	та ^т	ક્ષ.	র্ম.	Ą.	হ্ন
k	kra	khra	gra	tra	thra	dra	nra	pra	phra	bra	mra	shra	sra	hra

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with the Subscripts "Ra". Most of the subscripts do not change in tone. Those who do change are marked with \uparrow . Some also change in pronounciation:

지[꼬] 뙤[=> [tra] [티 뢴 뙤[=> [thra] 지[티 키] => [thra]	হ্য is an exception and is pronounced	[shra]
শা শ + ন + নচনাশ =	$\mathbb{T} [\overline{ka} + \underline{ra} + \overline{tak'}] => [\overline{tra}]$	→
ন্ধি নি. + ২. + ১৫১১ =	$[\overline{kha} + ra + \overline{tak'}] => [\overline{thra}]$	→
শ্রা শ + ম + মদুনাশ =	$[\underline{kha} + \underline{ra} + \overline{tak'}] => [\underline{thra}]$	→
হা দে + ন্য + ন্যদল্যৰু =	\overline{z} [\overline{ta} + \underline{ra} + $\overline{tak'}$] => [\overline{tra}]	→
শ্বা শ্ব: + ন্য: + ন্যদৃশ্ব্য =	$[\overline{\text{tha}} + ra + \overline{\text{tak}'}] => [\overline{\text{thra}}]$	→
হা ন্ + ন্ + ন্দ্ৰ্প্ৰ্য =	[tha + ra + tak'] => [thra]	→
র্বা ব' + ন' + নদন্যাঝ' =	$\underbrace{\mathbf{a}}_{[\underline{\mathbf{n}}\underline{\mathbf{n}}]} = \sum_{\underline{\mathbf{n}}\underline{\mathbf{n}}} [\underbrace{\mathbf{n}}_{\underline{\mathbf{n}}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{r}}_{\underline{\mathbf{n}}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{t}}_{\underline{\mathbf{n}}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{r}}_{\underline{\mathbf{n}}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{r}}_{\underline{\mathbf{n}$	→
শ্বা ন + ন + নদন্বাৰ্ম =	$[\overline{pa} + \underline{ra} + \overline{tak'}] => [tra]$	→
শ্বা শ + শ + শচনাৰ্শ =	$[\overline{pha} + ra + \overline{tak'}] => [\overline{thra}]$	→
হা ন + ন + নদ্বন্থ =	$[\underline{pha} + \underline{ra} + \overline{tak'}] => [\underline{thra}]$	→

হা	ব' + শ' + শদশাশ	=	শ্র	$\begin{bmatrix} na + ra + \overline{tak'} \end{bmatrix}$	=>	[na]	1
শ্রা	ম্ব: + ২: + বদৃশ্বশ	=	শ্রা	$[\underline{\text{ma}} + \underline{\text{ra}} + \overline{\text{tak}'}]$	=>	[ma]	1
শ্বা	পে: + ম: + মদন্যাক্ষ:	=	শ্বা	$[\overline{sha} + ra + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[sha]	↑
2	শ্ব: + শ্ব: + শদগ্ৰাশ্ব:	=	শ্রা	$[\overline{s'ha} + ra + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[sa]	↑
হা	স্ত: + ম্: + মদন্য্য্য	=	হ	$[\overline{ha} + ra + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[shra]	1

SWorkbook S1.P9.E1&E2

III) The Six Subscripts "La" অ'নদ্শ্বশ্বন্থ

Consonant ar can only be subjoined to the following 6 consonants:

ฑฑา	
-----	--

सं	म्य	तत्व	Ha	21 21	ह्य [da]
kLa	gLa	bLa	rLa	sLa	zLa

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with the Subscript "La". All the consonants are pronounced **[la]** in higher tone than the consonant " \mathfrak{A} " normally has. An exception \mathfrak{A} is, strangely enough, pronounced **[da]** in a lower tone.

মা	শা + শ্ব: + বদ্বশৃশ্ব	=	ম	$[\overline{ka} + la + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[la]	1
মা	শ + শ + নদৃশাশ	=	মা	$[\underline{kha} + \underline{la} + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[la]	1
R	ন + প' + নচ্নাশ	=	म्ब	$[\underline{\text{pha}} + \underline{\text{la}} + \overline{\text{tak}'}]$	=>	[la]	1
म्ब	ম + অ + মচ্দাশ	=	मत	[ra + la + tak']	=>	[la]	Ť
	শ + ম + নদ্বাম	=		$[\overline{s'ha} + la + \overline{tak'}]$	=>	[la]	Ť
M	র + অ' + মদ্যাশ	=		[sa + la + tak']	=>	[<u>da</u>]	V

SWorkbook S1.P10.E1&E2

IV) The Thirteen Wa Sur স্থান্ত্র নার্জনা

"Wa Sur" can only be subjoined to the following 13 consonants:

শাদ্দশাস্তদ্দ ঠ ক বিষদশ্য পদ্ +4

-गू-	۲ <u>۲</u>	ন্যু:	ર્સું.	5	₹	ૡ૽ૼ	ଜ୍ୟ	गिर	۲ ₃	स्य	ب م.	ন্থ:
kwa	khwa	gwa	nywa	dwa	tswa	tshwa	shwa	swa	rwa	lwa	shwa	hwa

Pronunciation

The great thing about "Wa Sur" is that it does **not change** the **pronunciation** or **tone** of the original consonant it is attached to. "Wa Sur" is only used in written language, in order to distinguish words with the same sound.

Exampl	e: र goat	Х	ਨ੍ਹ horn
	শ্ৰ' hair t	tip x	쾻. angle
< <u> </u>			

Spelling

Look at the way we spell consonants with a "Wa Sur".

~Ţ	ण + स + ज़र =		$[\overline{ka}] + [wa+sur] =>$	[ka]	→
	यि + क्ष. + ईर्र =		[kha] + [wa+sur] =>	[kha]	→
দ্	ग + स + हर =		[kha] + [wa+sur] =>	[kha]	→
ব্ব	९ + स + ह्रर =	ব্র	$[\underline{nya}] + [\underline{wa+sur}] \implies$	[nya]	→
5	ন + জ্ব + র্ব =	5	$[\underline{tha}] + [\underline{wa} + \underline{sur}] =>$	[tha]	→
ষ্ঠ্	र्छ + ऋ + ज़ुर्र =	ই	$[\overline{tsa}] + [wa+sur] =>$	[tsa]	→
ॡॕ	ळं + सं + ज़ुर्र =	र्द्ध	[ts'ha] + [wa+sur] =>	[ts'ha]	→
Q	ര + स + ह्र =	ଜ୍ୱ	[sha] + [wa+sur] =>	[sha]	→

5	र + अ + ज़र =	5	[ra] + [wa+sur] =>	[<u>ra</u>]	→
2	ल्य + स्र + ज़्र =		[la] + [wa+sur] =>	[la]	→
2	ਅ + ਖ਼. + ਭੇਂਂ =	191	[shha] + [wa+sur] =>	[shha]	→
শ্ব	স্ + স্থ' + র্ম =	শ্ব	$[\underline{ha}] + [\underline{wa} + \underline{sur}] =>$	[ha]	→

& Workbook S1.P11.E1

The Fourteen Root letters with a Superscript and Subscript

नहेन्म् अये भे मे नहुन्दी

ম: + শ: + সদস্যশ = म: + আ: + সদস্যশ =	Ð	$[ra + ka + tak'] \Rightarrow [ka] \rightarrow + [ya tak'] \Rightarrow [kya/tya]$	1] →
শ্ব: + শ্ব + বদ্বশৃশ্ব: = শ্লু: + অ + বদ্বশৃশ্ব: =	N.	$\overline{[s'ha + ka + tak']} \Rightarrow \overline{[ka]} \rightarrow \overline{[ya tak']} \Rightarrow \overline{[kya/tya]}$	1] →
ম: + ন্য: + মদন্যুর্ম: = র্ম: + আ: + মদন্যুর্ম: =	5	$[ra + kha + tak'] \Rightarrow [ga] + [ya tak'] \Rightarrow [gya]$	↓
শ্ব: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: = শ্ব: + অ: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: =		$\overline{[s'ha + kha + tak']} => [ga] + [ya tak'] => [gya]$	↓
শ্বা + শ্বা + নদন্দাশ্বা = শ্ব্ৰা + আ + নদন্দাশ্বা =	AL CONTRACT	$\overline{[s'ha + pa + tak']} => \overline{[pa]} \rightarrow + \overline{[ya tak']} => \overline{[cha]}$	→
শ্বা + না + নদল্যশ্বা = শ্বা + আ + নদল্যশ্বা =	R)	$\overline{[s'ha} + pha + \overline{tak'}] \Rightarrow [ba] + [ya tak'] \Rightarrow [ja]$	↓
ম: + ঝ: + সদৃশৃশ্ব: = झ: + आ: + সদৃশৃশ্ব: =	<u>B</u>	$[\underline{ra} + \underline{ma} + \overline{tak'}] \implies [\overline{ma}] \uparrow + [\underline{ya} \ \overline{tak'}] \implies [\overline{nya}]$	♠
শ্ব: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: = শ্ব: + অ: + বদ্যবাশ: =	RE I	$\overline{[s'ha + ma + tak']} \Rightarrow \overline{[ma]} \uparrow + \overline{[ya tak']} \Rightarrow \overline{[nya]}$	↑
শ্ব: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: = শ্ব: + ন্য: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: =		$[\overline{s'ha} + \overline{ka} + \overline{tak'}] => [\overline{ka}] \rightarrow + [\overline{ra} \ \overline{tak'}] => [\overline{tra}]$	→
শ্ব: + বা: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: = শ্ব + ম: + বদ্যবাশ্ব: =		[s'ha + kah + tak'] => [ga] + [ra tak'] => [dra]	↓
শ্ব: + ব্ব: + নদন্যশ্ব: = শ্ব: + ম্: + নদন্যশ্ব: =	2 AND	$[s'ha + na + tak'] \Rightarrow [na] \rightarrow + [ra tak'] \Rightarrow [na]$	→
শ্বা + শ্বা + নদল্বাশ্বা = শ্ব্ৰা + শ্বা + নদল্বাশ্বা =	KUI	$[s'ha + pa + tak'] \Rightarrow [pa] \rightarrow + [ra tak'] \Rightarrow [tra]$	→
শ্ব: + ন: + নদল্বাশ্ব: = শ্ব: + ন: + নদল্বাশ: =	NT N	[s'ha + pha + tak'] => [ba] + [ra tak'] => [dra]	↓
শ্বা: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাধ্য: = শ্ব্র: + শ্ব: + বদ্যবাধ্য: =	1949	$[s'ha + ma + tak'] \Rightarrow [ma] \uparrow + [ra tak'] \Rightarrow [ma]$	♠

SWorkbook S1.P12.E1&E2

Ð

H

Ð

F)

Ð

Ð

<u></u>

劉

শ্বী

2

쮌

Summary Sheet

30 consonants		শাদে:শাদে' ড'ক্ড'হ্'ম্য দৃ'ম'দ্'ৰা
শশন্থ্য-র্টু - 'গ্রুম'ত্ত্ব		নানানা
		ਤ ੱਲਾਂਵੱ'ਸ਼
		ଵଽଽ୳ଽ୴୲
		7.a.d.21
		5.181
The Four Vowels		ભે
<u> নন্তুদশ ন</u> লি		ধ্য
		ો
		Ĩ
The Three Superscripts	Superscript "Ra" र सर्वे	<i>শাব্দে</i> হার্ র দাব কার্যা হা
মর্দী ডব'শাধ্যমা	Superscript "La" सःसर्वे	<u>સ</u> ાસાસાસાસાસાસાસા
	Superscript "Sa" श्रःसर्वे	ૠૹૡૹૡૡ૱૱ૹૹ
	Subscript "Ya" অ'নদন্শ	<u>ଅଟେ</u> ଅ.ଅ.ଅ.ଅ
The Four Subscripts	Subscript "Ra" মানচন্দ্র্যা	য়৻য়য়ঢ়য়ঽয়য়য়য়য়য়
৫ইঁদাশ ডব নাৰী	Subscript "La" শ্র'ন্দ্র্যাশ্বা	<u>ଅ'ସ'ରି ଛି'ନି'</u> ଛି
	Subscript "Wa Sur" শ্ব	᠕ૺ.ૺૺૺૺૺૺ૾ઌૺૺૺ૾૾ઙૺૺૻ૱ૢૡૢ૾ૡ૾ૺ <u>૾</u> ૼૺ૱ૺઌૺૺઌૺૺ૾ૼ૾ૺ
	ৱশ	

	Overview of Pronunciation																	
	The F	our	teen R	loot L	ette	rs												
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
या.	 [ka]	NA	मि देन देन	 [ka],	>	NA	रों) रो रो	[tya] [tra] [ka]	→	NA	ंस) द्वरा द्वरा	[tya] [tya] [tra]	+	NA	स्त स	 [la]	ŕ	NA
۲۹.	 [kha]	А	-	-	-	-	র্যু রে দে	[thya] [thra] [kha]	→	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
न्त्र.	[kha] 	А	भित्र देख देख	[ga] —	¥	NA	ন্ট) না দুন	[thya] [thra] [kha]	→	A	मा) रूमा रूमा	[dya] [dya] [dra]	→	NA		 [la]	ŕ	NA
Ľ,	[nga]	NN	માં તેન સ્વે	 [nga]	1	N	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ন্ত'	[cha]	NA	તંજ	[cha]	>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
रू.	[ccha]	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	-
Ę	[ccha]	A	માં દેવા	[ja] 	¥	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
3.	[nya]	NN	Hes in	[nya]	1	NN	ર્સું.	[nya]	→	N	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
সূ.	 [ta]	NA	जहं जहं जा	[ta]	•	NA	হ	 [tra]	→	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ম্ন.	[tha]	А	-	-	-	-	in in	[thra]	→	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
٦ `	[tha] 	А	ir ar ar	[da] —	¥	N	iń in	[tra] [tha] 	→	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
त्र:	[na] 	NN	ito izo	 [na]	1	NN	র্ষ	 [na]	→	NN	่สุดส	 [na]	↑	NN	-	-	-	-
ب ر.	 [pa]	NA	संत इंत	 [pa]	1	NA	ম) ম	[cha] [tra]	→	NA	रंग होता	[cha] [tra]	↑	NA	-	-	-	-
শ	 [pha]	A	-	-	-	-	ख. स्र	[ccha] [thra]	•	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ন	[pha]	A	भंत सेत रेत	[ba]	↓	NA	ন্ট ন	[chha] [thra]	→	NA	ंद्रत) द्वत	[ja] — [dra]	¥	NA	ia	 [la]	1	NA

হ্য'	[ma]	NN	SS SS	 [ma]	个	NN	ષ્ટ્ર સ્ટ	[ma] [nya]	↑ →	NN NN	ાંઝે 'ઝરું 'અં	[nya] [nya] [ma]	↑	NN	-	-	-	-
ਤੱ	 [tsa]	NA	બંદું ભં	 [tsa]	→	NA	to ₂	[tsa]	→	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ਲੰ:	[ts'ha]	A	-	-	-	-	ŧġ	[ts'ha]	→	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ę	[ts'ha]	A	Àr	[dza]	→	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
स.	[wa]	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
୍ବ.	[sha]	А	-	-	-	-	ଜ୍ୱ.	[sha]	→	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ä.	[sa]	А	-	-	-	-	ίη	[sa]	→	А	-	-	-	-	ing	[da]	$\mathbf{\Psi}$	NA
۲.	[ah]	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
cd.	[ya]	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
٣	[ra]	A	-	-	-	-	۲	[ra]	→	А	-	-	-	-	ਜੋਬ	[la]	1	NA
ন্য.	[la]	А	-	-	-	-	લ્યું.	[la]	→	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
~q.	[shha]	A	-	-	-	-	ېم بې	[shha]	→	А	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	-
কা.	[s'ha]	A	-	-	-	-	A .	[s'ha]	↑	А	-	-	-	-	ইয়	[la]	1	NA
5	 [ha]	A	- AN	[lha]			ir ir	 [ha] [shra]	→	A	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
জে'	_ [a]	NA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Key to the table

1.	Root letters
2.	Pronunciation of simple letters
3.	Pronunciation of simple letters: A aspirated, NA non-aspirated, NN non-aspirated nasal
4.	Superscripts that exist in combination with the given root letter
5.	Change of sound of the root letter with a superscript
6.	Change of tone of the root letter with a superscript: ↑ The tone is <u>higher</u> than the tone that the simple letter carries → The tone is the <u>same</u> as the tone that the simple letter carries ↓ The tone is <u>lower</u> than the tone that the simple letter carries
7.	Superscripts: A aspirated, NA non-aspirated, N nasal
8.	Subscripts that exist in combination with the given root letter
9.	Change of sound of the letter with a subscript
10.	Change of sound of the letter with a subscript
11.	Subscripts: A aspirated, NA non-aspirated, N nasal
12.	Root letterswith a superscript and subscript
13.	Change of sound of the root letter with a superscript and subscript
14.	Change of tone of the rootletter with a superscript and subscript
15.	Root letters with a superscript and subscript: A aspirated, NA non-aspirated, N nasal
16.	Subscripts "La"
17.	Change of sound of the root letter with a Subscript "La"
18.	Change of tone of the root letter with a Subscript "La"

Tibetan Alphabet র্নির্:ক্টি:ব্র্র্র্র্যান্সম্প ১৯০০ ০০০০

Section Two ষ্ট্র'র্ক্তর'শ্ব

Word Formation ঊন্দ্রিনস্থ্রনস্থ্র

- 1. The Five Prefixes ই্রিব্দুগ
- 2. The Ten Suffixes ট্রাব্দুন্
- 3. The Two Post-Suffixes আন:ব্হ্বন্

Word Formation ॐनानी सुन कुन्या

In this section, we will have a look at how the words are formed in the Tibetan language. We will learn more about **prefixes**, **suffixes** and **post-suffixes**, and how they influence the pronunciation.



Prefix is a letter which comes **before** a root letter. In Tibetan language, only one prefix in a word is possible. The five prefixes are:

শ্ব	ا	ন'	ચા.	<i>с</i> .
ga	da	ba	ma	'a

19

How to pronounce the 5 prefixes

When spelling, the prefixes are pronounced differently than the root letter. Have a look at the box:

শ	=>	শার্শ	[<u>kha</u>] =>	[kha -o]
51	=>	51	[tha] =>	[tha -o]
ק	=>	নৰ্বি	[pha] =>	[pha -o]
মা	=>	মন্দ্র	[<u>ma</u>] =>	[<u>ma</u> -o]
ط	=>	र्वत्	[ah] =>	[ah -o]

How to spell words with prefixes

Let's have a look on how to spell words with prefixes on the following examples:								
শচ়ি	শা + দৃ + ` =>	শদী	[kha -o]	+	[ta]	+ [ng'deng po] =>	[te]
<u>ন্থ্</u>	५ + ४१ + २ =>	<u>ন্</u> ন্যু	[tha -o]	+	[kha]	+ [shab kyu]	=>	[gu]
ন্তৃ	ন' + ড' + ৢ' =>	নত্ত্ব	[pha -o]	+	[cha]	+ [shab \overline{kyu}]	=>	[chu]
মর্মি	حر: + ۲۹. + ۲۹. =>	মর্দি	[ma -o]	+	[kha]	+ [<u>na ro</u>]	=>	[m'kho]
दर्वे	षः + गाः + २२ः =>	प्र्यो	[ah -o]	+	[kha]	+ [<u>na</u> ro]	=>	[ng'go]

*∝***Workbook S2.P1.E1**

Look at the following table. Notice the consonants that follow the five prefixes. If you learn them by heart, you will have fewer problems with correct spelling in the future.

Prefix	followed by
শ্	<u>૱</u> ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ૱૱૱૱૱
5	শাশাদ্যমা
ন	য়য়ড়য়ড়ঢ়ঀয়ড়৾য়৾ঀয়ঀয়
ચા.	<u>৸</u> য়৸ৼ৻ড়ৼৼ৾ঀড়৾৾য়৾৾৾ঢ়৾ঀ
द .	৸য়৾৾ড়ৼ৾ঀ৾৾৾ঀ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾

&Workbook S2.P2.E2

Prefixes play a key role in spelling. Not only do they change the spelling to help distinguish words from each other (e.g. $\eta_{\overline{2}}$; "will send", $\eta_{\overline{2}}$; "sent"), but they also affect the sound and pronunciation of some root letters.

A) In terms of writing, prefixes follow these rules:

1. Letters স্থান্থান্যজ never take a prefix.

B) In terms of **pronunciation**, prefixes follow these rules:

1. Prefixes ar and a change root letters into a nasalized sound, e.g. an [1] [m'kho], and [1] [ng'khu].

2. Prefixes **never change the sound** or **tone** of masculine letters איז איז (Eu], און [Lu], און [Lu], און [Lu], און [Lu], און בי און [Lu], און און בי און ביאי און בי און ביאיייע גייען בי און בי און

3.Prefixes change feminine letters बाह दाह to a **deeper** tone, e.g. جرآ [go], هي [ju], مجرا [de], هي [dzi].

4. Prefixes change very feminine letters म्द्रुद्धाय to a **higher nasalized** tone. न्हें। [ngo], मुझे [nyi], बर्द्घा [no], न्हो। [me].

5. Prefix changes the feminine letter \mathfrak{A}^r to a **high** tone, e.g. $\mathfrak{P}^{\widetilde{\mathfrak{A}}}$ [yo]



Letter ¬

An exception would be the letter ¬. Look at the following table which shows the changes in its pronunciation and tone.

Prefix	Root letter	Pronunciation	Tone	E	Examples
٦:	<i>त</i>	[wa]	1	न्जु [.] [wu] he	ead (H)
٦:	73)	[ya]	1	جغَ [·] [ye] di	vide
٦:	Ĩ	[ra]	1	รุฐ [.] [dra] กล	ame of a Tibetan lineage
ਕ.	<i>ר</i> ז'	[ba]	V	جج: [ngʻbu] in	isect
٩.	73	[ja]	V	ج؏ۣڋ: [ngʻjung] to	o come
<i>ב</i> :	Т.	[dra]	\checkmark	حْجَ: [ngʻdri] t	to write

⊯Exercises S2.P1.E3

Other letters that change their original sound, when preceded with a prefix:

	Root letter	Sound	Tone	Examples	
	म्	[ga]	¥	त्रगे [.] [ge] virtue	
Prefix +	Ę	[ja]	\checkmark	جج: [<u>ng'ju</u>] to hold	
	٦.	[<u>da</u>]	\checkmark	مثم [•] [di] this	
	Ę	[dza]	\checkmark	दहेंद्र [.] [ng'dzin] to catch	

*∞*Workbook S2.P1.E4&E5

2) The Ten Suffixes ইমান্দ্র্বাব্রা

Suffix is a letter which comes **right after** the root letter. In the Tibetan language, two letters can be added to root letter. We call them suffix and post-suffix respectively. In this section, we will have a look at the ten suffixes which are:

ন্য:	۲:	5	व'	ন'	ম'	۲.	Ŧ	র.	Z V.
ga	nga	da	na	ba	ma	<u>'a</u>	ra	la	sa

It is impossible to set exact rules on how to pronounce the suffixes since many factors have to be taken into account; the pronunciation of suffixes depends on whether a word contains a prefix, a vowel (or both), which of the ten suffixes follows them, what accent the speaker uses, etc.

However, some rules can be laid down and applied generally.

A) In terms of **writing**, suffixes follow these rules:

- 1. They can be added to any consonant, even themselves (e.g. 55 155).
- 2. If ব' serves as a suffix, the root letter must have a prefix as well (e.g. ब्राह्म न्याय).

B) In terms of **pronunciation**, suffixes follow these rules:

Suffixes	Pronunciation	Similar pronunciation in English	Examples
711'	জন্য	শ' is almost silent, no equivalent	ন্ন [thak'] pure
मा.	をうい いちょう	ج: is nasalized, as in "lung"	קקין [thang] and
ন [.] ম	জন	ন similar to "up" but less pronounced	rap] excellent [rap]
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	জন্ম	ম' sounds as "um" in "come"	ন্যম্য [lam] path
<del>۲</del> :	(MA)	Pronounced as Scottish "R" "problem"	মন্ [mar] butter
ਕ.	-	Not pronounced and doesn't affect the root letter's pronunciation	মহন [m'tha] end
ম'	खेवा	[el]; ব্দ'is almost silent in spoken Tibetan, e.g. "elementary" in British English	নাশনা [sel] clear
बु:	ओत्	[en] as in "pen"	म्रह्म [men] inferior
5	জি	[e] as in "say"	aحן [ne] illness
<u>N</u> .	জি	[e] as in "say"	ন্যম্য [le] karma

জন্য	ঙ্গে + শৃ	=	জন	$[\overline{a}] + [kha] =$	[ak]
345.1	ष + ८	=	W7"	[a] + [nga] =	[ang]
3	জ + ব	=	3	$[\overline{a}] + [\underline{pha}] =$	[ap]
জন্ম	জ + ঝ.	=	জয়া	$[\overline{a}] + [\underline{ma}] =$	[am]
জন্	ष + र.	=	SNT	[a] + [ra] =	[ar]
জান	જા + વ.	=	জান	$[\overline{a}] + [\underline{ah}] =$	[a]
জন্ম	জ + বা	=	জন্য	[a] + [la] =	[el]
ন্দের	ष्म + ज्	=	জন্ব	$[\overline{a}] + [\underline{na}] =$	[en]
জেব্যা	জ + ঝ.	=	জাকা	$[\overline{a}] + [\overline{s'ha}] =$	[e]
لكلا	জ + ন	=	wy	$[\overline{a}] + [\underline{tha}] =$	[e]

How to spell words with suffixes

#### SWorkbook S2.P2.E1-E2

#### Vowels and Suffixes আরান্যমা

As we saw in the previous table, suffixes শান্ব'ন্'শ change the word's final sound into [জेল], [জेন্], [জे-], [জे'] respectively, provided the root letter does not carry a vowel.

Let's have a look now at what happens with the pronunciation when a word **contains a vowel** and one of the suffixes আৰ সংখ্যা

Suffix 🎮		Suffix बा	
છે. + વ. = છેલા છે. + વ. = છેલા છે. + વ. = <b>છે</b> લા છે. + વ. <b>છેલા</b>	$[\overline{\mathbf{i}}] + [\mathbf{la}] = [\overline{\mathbf{i}}]$ $[\overline{\mathbf{u}}] + [\overline{\mathbf{la}}] = [\overline{\mathbf{u}}\overline{\mathbf{l}}]$ $[\overline{\mathbf{e}}] + [\overline{\mathbf{la}}] = [\overline{\mathbf{e}}]$ $[\overline{\mathbf{o}}] + [\overline{\mathbf{la}}] = [\overline{\mathbf{o}}\overline{\mathbf{l}}]$	ભ્રે [.] +	$[\overline{i}] + [na] = [\overline{in}]$ $[\overline{u}] + [na] = [\overline{un}]$ $[\overline{e}] + [na] = [\overline{en}]$ $[\overline{o}] + [\overline{na}] = [\overline{on}]$
Suffix		Suffix 🔊	

*∝*Exercises S2.P2.E3

# The Two Post-Suffixes অন্ত্র্বাব্রিমা

In the Tibetan language, two post-suffixes exist. They are  $\underline{\gamma}$  and  $\underline{sq}$  Post-suffix refers to the letter which follows a suffix, making it the **last letter of the word**.

Look at the table and notice which suffixes precede the two post-suffixes:

Suffixes followed by:	post-suffix
ব'শ'শ্য	5
ন্যান্যান্যা	āv.
<u> २</u> :२/२	-

We **do not pronounce** the post-suffixes and they **do not affect the pronunciation** of words. They serve for spelling purposes only. They also need to be kept in mind when choosing a particle that will follow them.

### Post-suffix ק

This post-suffix is **not used anymore** in modern Tibetan language. However, in terms of grammar rule words act as if the post-suffix is still present, and the appropriate particle assigned to the syllable  $5^{\circ}$  must follow.

Former way of writing	Modern way of writing	Meaning
3J-51		to change/translate
^{કે} વના	र्धेवा	went
		to transform
ર્કુલન	ર્સુત્વા	to bestow
র্নীশশ্ব	٩	to attack
'ণিৰণ' <b>ড়া</b>	পীৰ:ডা	very
শস্থ্যবদা	শস্মন	to generate

#### Post-suffix 🄊

The post-suffix still present in modern Tibetan language. Its role is to differentiate words from each other. The pronunciation of both – words with and without the post-suffix – is **the same**. Look at the table for some illustrations:

Words without post-suff	x Meaning	Words with post-suffix	Meaning
ঝন্য	dispatches, will dispatch	মন্ <b>ন্</b> ম	dispatched
শ্দ্য	what(ever,)who(ever,) etc.	নান্ধা	snow
হন	stove	57 <b>8</b> 1	method
্বিম্বা	small piece	<b>ال</b> ه به الم	border land

#### ✓Exercises S2.P3.E1&E2

### How to Recognize the Root Letter

In order to be able to read in Tibetan, you need to keep in mind the following rules which will help you tell the root letter apart from other letters. With some practice, recognizing the root letter will become an automatic habit.

#### Rules for recognizing the root letter

1. If a letter carries a vowel, a superscript or a subscript, **it is a root letter.** e.g. ন্**ন্ ন্দ্রা গ্র**না নক্ত্রনা নক্স্রীনাশা

2. If a word is composed of <u>two letters</u> with NO vowel, superscript or subscript, **the first letter** is always the root letter.

3. If a word is composed of <u>three letters</u> with NO vowel, superscript or subscript, **the middle** letter is the root letter.

e.g. নাৰ্মন্থা নাম্পনা নৃশানা

Nevertheless, if the third letter is a post-suffix নৃ' or শৃ', **the first letter** is the root letter. e.g. **দে**শশা **র**ন্শা **ক**ন্শা

4. If a word consists of <u>four letters</u>, the **second one** must always be the root letter. e.g. বন্দ্রাশা বন্দ্রাশা বন্ধনশা

#### *∞* Exercises S2.P3.E3&E4
# Note

We have come to the end of Section Two. You should be able to know how to read now.

Start practicing your reading skills on any text in Tibetan. Spell out the words aloud. When you gain more fluency in spelling, you can start reading words directly.

### रहें व गूर सेनब भर र नगर न र र ल

#### ้ธีๆ'ๆ๙รา VOCABULARY

নন্	book
ন্শী ক্লন্য	teacher
র্ম্নি-শ্রেন্	student
র্টনা উ	table
র্ন্যুন'নশ্রুমা	chair
<u>বিশাম শ</u> দা	whiteboard
<u> </u>	pen
<b>N</b>	door
<u>क्षे</u> छ:छिन्।	window
হ	boy
থ্-সু	girl
জ'মা	mother
ন:অন্যশ্বা	father
র্বিন্'শ	a Tibetan
भे	person/ people
$\hat{f}$	today
A.WZ.	yesterday
শন্দটিৰা	tomorrow

### ฮูล'อี้า'าลั้า'า PHRASES

নশ্ৰ-প্ৰ-মন্ট-প্ৰেমাক্ষা	Hello.
ત્રને મેં ખેત્ર પશ્	How are you?
দিলপ্র দেখন	Hello.
নশ্বন:জা	(Good)bye. (by the one leaving)
না'শ্রস্থা	(Good)bye. (by the one staying)
શ્વર્ત કેવ વુગ ખેંદા	See you tomorrow.
<u>ज्ञ</u> मार्थेम्	See you.
હિન નન્ સું ભેષા	Who are you?
मुगारू हे के	Thank you.
য়ঀয়ড়৾৾৾ঢ়৻য়৾৾৾৾৾৾৾ঀ	Never mind.
ন্বীন্থ্যন্দা	Sorry.
<u> ২: ই শ'র্থ শ</u> ুর স্থ প্র	I'm late.
व्दी वा रे रेना	What is it?



การ์ จิพากริ เมิกเพ สสายกาพ รกัรพารการ ะ สิพาผู้พาสิกพาษกา র্ম্নি-শ্রন गयार्थेन्यारेना अरावेन्यार्भेन নশী ক্ৰাৰা ন্ত্রনাথ্য

Student: Hello, teacher. Sorry, I'm late. Teacher: Never mind. Come in and sit down.

Read the conversations. Listen to your teacher and 3 repeat the dialogues after him.

### Word अनुस्त

The word প্রশ্বশ can be used on various occasions. These two are the most common ones:

1 Use অগ্রম after names, professions or titles to show your politeness or respect. For example: নগ্র পিম মেনামা ক্র মেনামা

2 In polite answers, use প্রাশ with the copula. For example: ๛ฺ๚ฺ๚๙๚๎ฦ (I am) ๛ฺ๚ฺ๙๚๎ฦ (I do/have) ๛ฺ๚ฺ๙ रेन्। (it is)

# จร_ิ'อี้รา GRAMMAR

Personal Pronouns জীন'ৰ্জনা

There are two groups of personal pronouns - less polite and more polite. For now, keep using the pronouns from the second group BUT use  $\pi'(\tilde{\mathfrak{T}})$  when talking about yourself (yourselves).

### 지 Less polite

I	51	we	ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
you	Ĩ.	you	<u>)</u>
he/she	<u>الم الم الم الم الم الم الم الم الم الم </u>	they	<u> </u>
it	Ĵ.	these	<u>ने</u> रहें।

### A More polite

I	<u>۲٬۲۲٬</u>	we	ᠵ᠄᠇ᡪᠵ᠄ᢅ᠋᠊᠋᠊᠋ᡬ		
you	ছিন/ছিন্স্ন্	you	<u>ۊ</u> ؙ٦:ۿٙٳ/ۊ <u></u> ؙ٦:٣٢:ۿٙٳ		
he/she	ألآ تجحزا فآ تجحزا	they (m/f)	آ ^م جد کھا		
he OR she (H)		they (m/f) (H)	किंन्ट्रन्ने or किंन्ट्रने		
See Grammar Section p74					

### <u>ສ</u>ຸສາຊີງ **EXERCISE**

Which personal pronoun(s) would you use:

a) when talking **about** these people (use 3rd person)

रेव में छे। ন্ধব'ন্দশাশ কিঁ ব্য ন'মন্ম b) when talking to these people (use 2nd person) ন্ব:র্মা র্ম্নন'শ্রনা দুন্থনি-স্লুমা জাস্বা 6 จร_้เข้รา GRAMMAR affirmativo रेना [भेवा] ল্পিবা (I) am (we) are ইনা रेता (you) are (you are ইন্য (he/she/ it) is रेन्। (they/these) are negative TO BE মীবা (we) are not শ'ন্দা [মিনা] (I) am not ম'র্ন্রা (you) are not শ'র্ন্য (you) are not ম'র্ন্বা (they) are not ম'র্ন্বা (he/she it) is not See Grammar Section p73

कें रेटा गायेर येवश ক্লিঁঅ'মা বশ্বদ'জা সদ'ষ্টব'দ্রবার্থদৈ'৷ कें मेना आणा जुमार्थेना Tsering: Bye! Dolma: Good bye! See you tomorrow. Tsering: All right. See you.

ľ

4

ন্থ্ৰ:মা

સું સેં

กลลากลรา

নন্দ শিল্পির নামা

नगः भेषा यग्राष्ट्राधेता वग्राषाहे को

Lhamo: How are you? Tashi: I am fine, thank you.

ามางใจป กลงาวสาไ

Lhamo: Hello. Tashi: Hello.

#### NOTE JUDA

In Tibetan, one would hardly hear "Who are you?" - छेन्फ्रा when asking for someone's name since it comes across too harsh. However, when on the phone, you can use this sentence to get to know the speaker's name. You can also just say શું ભેતુ ગગ



 Fill in the blanks with भौत् '/रेत्'.

 २⁻२२२भेश
 ।

 विं र्क्ट ब्यूप्प
 ।

 वर्ग 'क्यू क्य'
 ।

 बर्ग 'क्यू क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्यू क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्यू क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्यू क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्यु क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्य क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्य' क्य क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्य' क्य क्य'
 ।

 की 'क्य' क्य क्य'
 ।

Fill in the blanks with भेष. /स'रेन.

८.यक्षेय.पहुंच.	[	
র্নি:র্ক্টি:র্ন্নুন্ শ্রুন্	[	
वर्ते नगार मर	[	
છેનું મુન્ આયા	ſ	
<b>ৼ</b> ৾৾ૹ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૣૼૼૼૼૼૻ	 [	
ૡ૽૾ૢૼૺ૾ૹ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼ૽ૼૼૼૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૻઌૹૣ૽ઌ		-
র্মি নগ্র পিশ্ব	[	
वर्दे किं र्डेग हे		

### ⁸ দিঁন'ন্থ'ন্টনা WHO IS HE?

Work in pairs. Point at the picture on page 30 and take turns in asking each other what the people's names are. Then, point at the people in the classroom and ask again.

र्विन (यन खा) मेना

क्टी' (देन') रेना

ৰনী'শ'নী WHAT IS IT?

দ্দি'শা' ন' নি না

র্শিন:ঝ্র:নিনা

Work with your partner. Take turns in asking अर्ने गरिने while pointing at various things around you. Answer the questions.



• স্নন্ সাঁন্ zero

9	মৃৃত্যি	one	6	র্শ	six
٩	শ্বিষ্ণ	two	2	ন্র্বা	seven
শ	শাস্থ্যমা	three	5	শক্তুশ	eight
۳	ମନ୍ଧି	four	Ç	<u>ন্থা</u>	nine
۲	শ্র্রাfive		90	ন্ত্র	ten

### 1 हुन्गवे। EXERCISE

Say the following numbers in Tibetan.

१	90	٣	ŀ	۲	5	9	6	3	ป	0
2	10	5	9	4	8	1	6	3	7	0

### 12 🛃 👌 🕹 👌

This is a children's game to practice numbers. The words can be translated as

"both of us (= friends) get a golden earring".

Repeat the lines once, and then change the number. Start slowly and gradually get as fast as you can. Have some fun while practicing!



13	ঀয়ঀ৾ঀঢ়ৢঀ৾	DAYS OF THE WEEK			
	শাৰণ	day	(planet)		
	17 17	Monday	(Moon)		
	মন্মন্য	Tuesday	(Mars)		
	ম্রুন্য'শ্য	Wednesday	(Mercury)		
	ন্মারন:ধ্রম:ম্যা	Thursday	(Jupiter)		
	51-25-20	Friday	(Venus)		
	শ্বীব শ্ব	Saturday	(Saturn)		
	हे.या	Sunday	(Sun)		
14 المجرب المجامع EXERCISE					

 $\ensuremath{\P}$  Look at the diagram below. Answer the questions by filling in the blanks.

### ឝ៌'។ Question



#### त्भेज्। Answer



 $\ensuremath{\,^{\ensuremath{\boxtimes}}}$  Work with your partner. Practice the questions and answers.

# 15 স্ত্র্র্রাণ্যলী > EXERCISE

Match the answers in the second column to the sentences in the first column. The first one has been done for you.

নশ্হুই:জা की गारे रेना ने रेन्द्र मात्र पारे रेना র্শিন:শ্ব:নিনা ধিনম'র্শ্বিমা ন্র্বাদ্রু দুর্বা

ૡ૽ૼૼૼૼઽૡૢૻ૿૱ૼૼ૽૾ૺઽૺૢ ૡઽ૾ૺૹૢૻૢૺ૿ૼૼૼૼૺ૿ૻ૱ૺ ૡઽ૾ૺૹૢૻૢૺ૿ૼૼૼૼૺૻૺ૱ૻૺ૱ૺ ૣૣ૾ૼૼૺૺૼૼૼૼૺૺૺૺૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૺૺૺૺૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૺૼ૾૾ૼૻ૾ૡ૿૾૱૿ૺ૱ૺૡ૽ૼ ૱ઽ૾ૢૢ૾ૺ૱૿ૢ૱ૡ૿૱ૺૣૣૢ૿ૢ૾ૣ૾૾ૻઌ૿ૻૻ૾૾ૻૺ૾૾ૺૼૻ૾૾ૺ

16	ਖ਼ਫ਼ਗ਼ੑਸ਼ਜ਼੶ਸ਼ੑੑ੶ਫ਼ੑਖ਼ੑ	CLASS INSTRUCTION
	નેનાવસુંશા [બા]	Open your book.
	୍ର୍ମ୍ମ ଅନ୍ମା [୯୩] ସ୍ୱିସଂସ୍ଦର୍ଶ୍ର ସେଥା [ଜ୍ଞା]	
		Close your book.
	हेंन जा	Listen.
	শ্বীক্ষা [ন্দা]	Write.
	র্ম্রিশাশ্বা [শ্বা]	Read.
	মৰ্বাশ [শ]	Sit down.
	બર વેંદશ [ૹ]	Stand up.



### EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with a correct consonant.





Look at the conversation below. Use the blanks to write your answers.



### ส์จาสสารราวัง



1	ॾऀॻॱॻॺॸ।	VOCABULARY	
£	£1.9	rinpoche (lit. jewel)	
ন্থ্ৰ'ম	I	lama	
ব্য		boy/son	
ন্ত্ৰ'ৰ্ম		girl/daughter	
ন্দ্র্বি:শ্য		monastery	
ৰ্বিশাশ-হা		breakfast	
Ê		dog	
ЩТ.	1	also, too	
ष्यवे		nun/paternal aunt	
איזאן		(cell) phone	

### मुन'श्रुँन'वर्हेन'न। PHRASES

Good bye. (H) র্বনম'জা (by the one staying) Good bye. (H) নিয়া প্রা (by the one leaving) শ্বু:ই:নই:প্রিমা Good morning. র্বিগামান্যামন্টার্মামা Good morning. ৾ৡ৾৾৾৾৾ৡ৾ৼ৾ঀ৾৾৾ৼ৾৾৾ৼ৾৾৾ঀ৾৾ৼ৾৾৾৽ Good afternoon. দর্বী দর্শ্বে নি দু ন Good evening. Good evening. *দ্র্যান:ই*'নন'ঐগব্য শ্লন্যন্থ্যমান্দ্রন্থ্যমার্ How are you? (H) *દ્દે* રાસ સુવાર્પે તા See you later. জন্ম see. (C) OK. (C) 4.41

### NOTE JUDA

### Meeting people

The Tibetans now have a different way of greeting each other than we are used to. When they meet a friend or colleague they come across frequently, instead of "hello" they say শৃশশ্ meaning "Where are you going?" or गरेंग्रेन्गे आभat are you doing?". The phrase সন্মাণীশ নই শ্রিশাশ would sound strange and is never used in this case.



Read the conversations. Listen to your teacher and repeat the dialogues after him.

### ุ¬รเข้รเ GRAMMAR

### TO BE – question _ দ্বি'দম'/ই'্র'দম'

In spoken language, राजा stands for a question mark (?). In sentences that contain "wh-questions", such as "who, what, where," etc., মশ is NOT NEEDED. For example শ্মম্মিম্শী থীকা singular plural Am I? <u>দ'র্মন্য</u> Are we? <> কি বিদ্যুগ্র Are you? อิรารราพิสารพ

Are you? ট্রিন র্টেন আঁর নেমা

Is he? Is she? Is it? गिँरेन्य्या सेंरेन्यया करेंरेन्यया करेंग्रेन्यया Are they? गिँकेंग्रेन्यया

#### TO BE - answer

<u>฿ุรารราจฃฺ</u>จิฆาพิสารม Question: (শগ্রমার) জিরা or (শগ্রামা) মীরা Answer: र्वि नगु भीषा रेड राष्ट्रा व्याय रेडा व्याय या रेडा Question: (लगाया) मेना or (लगाया) यामेना Answer: 🖎 See grammar section p74

Note: In written language though, **SIN** means **since**, **as**, and **because**.



มาริรา ผั้าพิ่าคิมาริร

0) র্মি - নশ্রা পিমা

র্মি'নগ্রা'প

**2**5

ñs:

ã.

≍:ੈੱਡ:

ÀT:\$.

हिन'र्न्नरहें' -

35'75'

1)

९)

३)

۳)

۲)

6)

2^J)

ঝ'র্মহ'রআ

ইশ

ন্মু'শা

জ'রা

ন্ন'মা

দশী ক্লব

র্ম্নিন'খ্রন্য

रेत रें के

- 2) Honorific word for "statue"
- e.g. শৃশ্দি golden statue (H)

### ষ্ণ্র্রা > EXERCISE

What greeting do you use in Tibetan:

in the morning? in the afternoon? in the evening?

How do you ask: How are you? How are you? (H) 8

าร'ฐัรן GRAMMAR

### **Possessive Pronouns**

singular		plural		
न्दे.	my/mine	<i>न्:</i> क्वेंदे:	our/ours	
हिन्'र्रू:गी'	your/yours	હેનુ:મન:ર્જેવે:	your/yours	
विवे:/र्रेवे:	his/her	নি ক্লিব	their/theirs	
(র্মি'ন্দ'ন্দী'/র্মি'ন্দ'ন্দি')	his/her	اَمْ حَجَ هُمُ	their	
र्विनः(ननः) मीः	his/her (H)	ᡏᠯᠮ᠋᠆᠇᠆ᠮᢆ	their	
See Grammar section p75				

#### ุ¬ร'ฏัรๅ GRAMMAR 10

Particle 🍕

Use ar when you want to say in, at, on, or to.

See Grammar Section p86

### 11

#### ज़ᢁདॱऺॖॖख़ॷॕॖॸॱऺऺॸड़ॸ। >conversation practice

Work in pairs. Practice the dialogue first in colloquial, then in honorific language. Don't forget to use the particle a. Keep changing the places:

गायर वर्षे मे	-धेवा	र्श्जेनःमुःभःदर्शेःमेःभेत्वा द्विनःमुःभःदर्शेःमेःभेत्वा
শাশন্		वहेतःमुःभःवर्मेःमेःधेत्र
ন্যাম্ব-মার্য বিশ্বা	गेन्धेवा	न्गेंदायायायमें मी भीवा
۳ <b>.</b> ه	Places:	
ৰ্দ্য	home	
75arran	bank	
<u>عما المحرا</u>	post office	

library

temple

cafe

restaurant

### রই'স্তরি'ইনা WHOSE IS IT?

Work in pairs. Point at things around you and ask and answer to whom they belong. Follow the example:

શુ:ગુ:વર્ન શુવે નેના की हिन मन भी हु मु मेन

### 😫 ন'শার্জি 🔰 EXERCISE

Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences below. Rewrite the correct sentences in the space provided. There can be more than one mistake per sentence.



### **EXERCISE**

<u>नमे सहेंना</u>

3'[75]

5.195.1

শন্থনা অন্য দিন্য

Find mistakes in the spelling. Rewrite correct sentences.

র্বিশান্যানন্টান্সন্দ	
श्व. मु. स्रेग	
יין־יידין	
ગર્ઢ અગચાયાયર બાવર્સે ગો ખેતા	
ઌ૱ઌ૱ૣ કે.ૡ	
<u>देश</u> यः द्युगार्थे।	

13	জন'ল্রনম' গ্র ক্ষ	אין אר ארי ארי ארי ארי ארי ארי ארי ארי ארי	नेन'र्ब्रेन'क्रे'नर्दे'नर्देन'न्। USEFUL PHRASES
<i>99</i>	নন্তু:শৃন্টশা	eleven	
23	নন্তু:শন্ধিম্যা	twelve	🗖 দশ'()ন্দ্রি'র'পশ্ I forgot ().
りみ	নন্তু নাধ্যুমা	thirteen	🗖 रश्वर्तेत्र:भग 🛛 I made a mistake.
9C	<u> </u>	fourteen	🗖 অন্যসন্থ্রমান্য্ন Repeat it, please. (H)
94	নই শ্ব	fifteen	🗖 गायेन्द्रगहात्स्य प्रत्य Say it slowly, please.
96	নন্তু:ব্রুশ	sixteen	🗖 দশস্র্গ্রামার্মিদা 🛛 I don't understand.
ŋəl	নন্ত:ন5্ব্য	seventeen	
25	নই নক্তুন	eighteen	17 ষ্ট্রন্যশ্রি। > EXERCISE
りに	নিস্ত নির্যা	nineteen	Translate the following sentences into Tibetan.
२०	કુ.તી	twenty	1 Where are you going?
2 S	ee Numbers in Gr	ammar Section 🔷	2 Ok. See you later.
			3 What's up?
14	ᠵ᠋ᢍ᠋ᠴᡃᢩ᠊ᡒᠬ᠋ <mark>᠆SPEA</mark>	KING SKILLS	I
	JU ION JULA	MINU SMILLS	4 All right. Thank you.
(끼) 5	Say the followir	ng numbers in Tibetan.	5 I am well. How are you?
	-	1 16 5 13 8 2 17 6 18 9 14 3 10	18 ខ្ចੇ'ਡਕ'ള്ട'ㅋ록ㅋ <b>TONGUE TWISTERS</b>
(四)	Now read the T	ibetan numbers.	Repeat the tongue twisters after your
94	🗢 १५ ७	१० २ १ [∞] ৫ १ ² २ ४	teacher.Then, practice alone. How fast
13	4 96 99	20 9 ² <del>2</del> 92 92	can you get?
(피)	Work in pairs. S	Say a number between 1-100. Your	१) ર્ત્વે મુંર્કે બેન બેન બુવા વી મુંર્કે રેવા રેવા
par	tner says the ne	ext three numbers.	٩) ৸ৢ৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾য়য়য়৾য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾
	নাস্থ্যমা	નલા શ રૂગ	1) I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I
			<ol> <li>रायासा खुगा वें</li> </ol>
	~		
<u>ש</u> קיאקיי	ฦํๅฅํ๚๚๛๚๚๛๚	ילֹילֹקן what is your phone numbe	ER? <>) ঘন'র্ট্রামনা দিন'র্ট্রাদনা
15 _(۳) ر	Jse the key p	hrase and find out the telephone	
		e people in your class. Note them	٤) ટ્રી. મુ. ગેં નુ. ગોં નુ. ગેં નુ. ગોં નુ. ગો ગોં નુ. ગોં નુ. ગ
	n on a piece of		
(四)	Read the follow	ing telephone numbers in Tibetan.	19 בֿחַיחַפָּקיאָזיאַדאָא אַבּאיַנאַקאַן 19 געוויער corner
			19
2	শন্ম্র্র্র্মেন্দ্র্যা	61-13-396340	र्वेन से The Tibetans
3)		0069-13-49-094226	Go to p98 and let's get to know
3)		21-30-693601	Tibetan people better!
ھک	ક્ષુ'ર્સે <u> </u>	61-96-0e21294	

VOCABULARY *ซิ*ปิน ช ุ¬รเข้รเ GRAMMAR 3 Norminalizers = ' / =' ক্রুন্থ:মা capital city When consonants [¬] and [¬] follow a noun, they র্ষ্রনান্ত্রনা city denote a person. In that case, the consonant  $\overline{\neg}$  is র্রীন:রন্যা town র্র্যান:ব্যান্থীনা pronounced [wa]. village র্মানাথ্য:শ্য./প্রা friend male/ female E.q.: দ্ব্যা প্রদাশ শ্ব দ্রিম'মক্টমা neighbor ম্রু:ম্য:বা দ্র্র্রুনা:মা nomad লিন:মা farmer doctor শ্বব'শা 14 ন্যক্ষ'শ্যা job, work สิรา name from ৰশা 1 35253 ধ্ৰ'শী৷ מבאיקקראין NOTE JOAT খ্র'গী Nominalizers- শ্'/র מבאיקקראין খ্র'শী In some cases, it is possible מבאיקקראין to distinguish a male from Jamyang: female person by using  $\tilde{\mathfrak{T}}$  and Yuki: ञ् respectively. Example: ञ्चूग^रा

শ্রুনার্ম্য (mother-

हिन नमा कर भी का

Unit One (()

ลีุ้ราสสาระ

follower of the Geluk lineage inhabitant of Lhasa See Grammar Section Close your books. Listen to the teacher reading the conversations. How much can you understand? ติรารราทิามิราทาราริรา MANA 7351 न्देश्वेन्यास्य गी हेन्। अन्थे। हिन्दरहेर्डेन्द्र अधेवयश พैवा महेर्सेम्द्र श्रेषेता आहेरहेन्स्म ร์วิ:มีราคาครุมารุฎรมาสิรา ราษามรัรสมานิสา ราคส์ทานาลิทานิสา < भाषत हिन रहा खुगा मे राज मा र में छुना Hi, what's your name? My name is Yuki. Jamyang: I see. Are you Japanese? Yuki: Yes, I am. And how about you? Jamyang: I'm Jamyang. I'm from Amdo. I'm a nomad. Yuki: It's nice to meet you, Jamyang. Jamyang: It's nice to meet you, too.

-	J - J	
	[	
2	নশ্বম'শাদন্	हिन् रन्म या कर्ष थेवा
	<u>ક</u> ્ર.રુવ્ય	रःक्तुःग्नरःवश्वःभव्यवा
	নঝঝশ্বাদ্য	हिनः न्द्रः कुया भाव भाषित यथा
	<u>સ</u> .રંજના	มิลา ระยิ่านิเฉพามิลา ระระรมเพานาสุมานิลา
`	নশ্বমন্দ্র	القرح بحد شأ بعد من سابعا بخر بحر ال
)	ર્સ્ટ.સુભ	- ୢୢଈ୕୶୷୲ଵୖୄ୶୲ୖ୴
	Samten:	Where are you from?
	Rahul:	I'm from India.
	Samten:	Are you from the capital?
	Rahul:	No, I'm not from Delhi. I'm from Dharamshala.
	Samten:	What's your job?
	Rahul:	l'm a doctor.

### <mark>গুর'র্ট্রন'ল</mark>ইন'ন্। PHRASES

See Grammar Section p75

(father-in-law)

in-law)

ৠৣ৾৸য়য়৾৾য়৾৾ঀৼ৾৾ঀ ופלידדייוויאבייוידידרו দ্রিন দেশ্যী মার্ক্তর শা নি দিশ ষ্ট্রিস'ন্দ'শারশ'শির त्रेंग्सेन्ग्यानश्चतावहेंत्रावेन्। ষ্ট্রি- নেন প্রবাদ শাদ শাদ শি ত্রন র্দ্রিসাম্রার্ম বিশ্বার দিন্দ্র বিশ্ব বি

Hello (H) What's your name? What's your name? (H) Where are you from? My name is Tenzin. Nice to meet you. Nice to meet you. (H)

### 5 রুঝ'দেহ'র'রিণ্শ। countries and nationalities

শ্রীন্য দেশ	countries	बीःदिमाया	nationalities
षारी	America	พาริ ๆ	American
ন'রু:ইন্থা	Brazil	<i>ব</i> 'রু'ই'শ'ন	Brazilian
শি'ব'শ	Canada	শি'ব'ল'শ	Canadian
ক্ৰু:বৃশ	China	ক্র্:বৃশা:শ	Chinese
ન્દીન સુત્ય	England	<u> </u>	British
শ'রুব'মি	France	ধ'রুব'র্ঝ'না	French
<i>ह्</i> त्र:यंदे।	Germany	হ্ম:ম'ন	German
ભે' <u>ત</u> ૃ'વૈ	Italy	ભે <i>'</i> તૂ'મે'ગ	Italian
ক্রু:শৃশ	India	ক্রু:শৃস:স	Indian
3. <u>7</u> 5.1	Japan	<i>৾ৡ</i> ৾ৼ৾৾ঢ়৾৾৾৴৾ঀ	Japanese
র্মনার্শ	Mongolia	র্মনার্ম-না	Mongolian
নন্দ:ধ্রনা	Nepal	নন্দ:র্না	Nepalese
র্জান্থ হার্	Russia	জ্ব.2.র.ন	Russian
শ্বী স্বাধী	Spain	শ্ব:নব্যন্য	Spanish
র্ননা	Tibet	র্নির্নগ	Tibetan
ধ্য:র্ইনা	Europe	सुर्रेन न	European

If you come from a smaller country that some Tibetans may not know, it is sufficient to say "I'm from Europe" নাজ্য বিষয় জীবা



3	हेगा	มู้ (คมพ. ค.ส )
	- হুজি	มี [คณณาสุรา]
	हेगा	ૹૢૢૢૢૢૢૣૡૹૹૻૻૹ૱ૻ ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૹૻઌૢૻૡૻૻૡૻ૽ૡ
	- হুক্টা	ઽૼૡ૽ૺૼ૽ૼૹ૾ઽૻૡ૽ૻૹૻૼ૽ૼૹ૽ૼ૽ૼ૱ૼૣૢૢૢૢૢૢ૽ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡ૽ૻૹૻ૾૾૾ૼૡૻ૾ૡૻ૽ઌૻૹૻ૽ૼૡૻૻૡ૽ૻૡૻ૽ઌૻ૾ૡ૽ૻઌ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ૱૱
	हेगा	ร์สิ่ามีราคารัสาคฐารสิรา ผู้รารรามธุณาสมารฤดารับสูรา
	<u>রু</u> 'বী	< : भारा हिन र र : सह वा र न माव र में जुरा
	Jack:	Hello. (H)
	Rani:	Hello. (H)
	Jack:	What's your name?
	Rani:	My name is Tsomo. And what is your name?
	Jack:	I'm Dhondub. Nice to meet you. (H)
	Rani:	Nice to me you, too. (H)

### Words माज्य माजरा

In Tibetan, if you want to say "where from", use শাৰ্কশা as in "Where are you from?" or "Where are you coming from?". On the other hand, শাৰ্মন is used in sentences like "Where are you?", "Where are you going" or "Where is it?".

### 6 ଞ୍ରୁର୍ମ୍ୟାର୍ଶ୍ୱ > EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with ग'रे' or ग'त्र'.

1 85:75	धिव
۹ ñ.	रेन्
भ हों	रेन्
≈ हिन्ररूर्गि सेन	٦
५ मिन्दगी अर्ळतु	٦
৫ বিঁহ:ক্ট	٦
्र तिं सेंदे से द	रेन्

1	হ। विवेश्वेरणगरेरेन्। भुगवर्षिणश्रा विवेश्वेरणग्रेन्द्रमा विविन्नतृत्यरेन द्या वेत्वा अविश्वेरणगरेरेन्द्रा भुगवर्षिणश्रा अविश्वेरण्याद्ववेत्वेन् द्या वेत्यान्त्रगरेन्। भुगवर्षिणश्रा वेत्त्वरण्युव्याद्येर्यान्त्रगरेना व्यवित्तर्याक्षेत्रारेन्। भुगवर्षिणश्रा वेत्त्वर्याद्येर्यान्त्रगरेना व्यवित्तर्याक्षेत्रारेना
	<ul> <li>boy: What's his name?</li> <li>monk: His name is Jack. He's Canadian.</li> <li>boy: And what is her name?</li> <li>monk: Her name is Rani.</li> <li>boy: Where is she from?</li> <li>monk: She's from a village in Nepal. She's a farmer.</li> </ul>





हेन-रन-गावर्श्वा

र्दे हे नजु किन र्देता -حمال الم हर्ष्यमेवर्त्रमोर्ग्रन्थेश

### ज़^ॼདॱऺॖऺड़ऀऀऀॷॕॖॸॱऺॖॸॖड़ॸ। CONVERSATION PRACTICE

Unit One ((M)

ลีุ้ราสสารร

л Work in pairs. Use the conversations 1-3 to role-play the dialogues with your partner. Use different countries and nationalities, as well as key phrases.

- A How many phrases do you remember by heart? Say them.
- ম Close your textbook and try to role-play a dialogue with your partner without looking at the conversations.
- r Work in pairs. Form sentences according to the example. Use the countries and nationalities respectively from  $\eta$  with the names listed below.

র্মনার্ম ন

হ্র-মে'ন্য

Example: ईंबा/अर्भा/अर्भराग



भेःमया / भेः जय्म / हिन्स्ता / भेः येया / भेः न्या / शुः हुः गी। राहा / हेरजी रे मिरा / हे हे ज्या

### שאאד'S YOUR JOB? פֿריארייד) איזיאיזיאיז איזיא אואד' א איזייזי איזיא אואד' א

Work in pairs. Ask you partner about his/her and other people's jobs. Don't forget to use वैग' डेग' or भैग. Use the professions provided below.

हिन्दर्मा व्यक्ष गामा से से	
	र्वित्तः विम्रा रे किंग् के ना के कि
฿ๅ๚๚	professions
শ্বুব'ৰ্নশ'ম	nurse
हेवर्'र्हेग'ग	policeman
प्देवरा/बा	actor/actress
শ্বিশ্ব:শ্ম	singer
<u>क्</u> चेन्य	receptionist
ম'হামা	cook
ষিষশ ক্রিন্য	lawyer
দি'র্মি'ন	driver
ৰনশ:ৰূ'ন	waiter/waitress
กลัญพุณ	mechanic
ર્ગુમ્ટ પ્લેમા	secretary
प्रमान पहें ना	director
at the second se	shopkeeper
र्डेंब'न'र्ये	writer
વ્યશ્વસંત્	unemployed

### 13 ষ্ট্রন'শ্রি| > CONVERSATION EXERCISE

- ¬↑ Choose a new nationality and job for yourself.

   Don't tell anyone.
- Go around the class and ask students to find out their new identities.



Listen to the song 'দ্বি'নেই|— "Peace". Write down any vocabulary that is new to you. Find more songs on ঐর্জ্যশ্যাদ্বশ্য -"Heart Songs" by Tibetan musician Jhola.

### 14

#### ন্নু'শঙ্গ SONG

*קום*לו গ্বাদনঝাদন উঁলা ই প্ৰিয়াঝা રી છે છે સે છે રી સા ন্ব:র্মা রি'ননা রি'ননা ব্য ষণ্ঠষ:শ্ લે નરો લે નરો वि'नने। वि'नने। वि नने। मर्के दे र्श्वे ज नगा। લે નને હેન છે. સન્યા ন্ব:র্মা ดิ ารริ าราพิ ายุราย 5 ন্ব:র্মা ลิาาริาารัสามิราพิรีสาม ลิาาริาารัสามิราษัรสาม ব্য यक्षय'ता वि'नने वि'नने ลิาาริาราชีวิาร์สาขม ัด สร้า ้ติ จริเ ลิ:กริ PEACE

(lyrics & music by Jhola)

Girl:	P-E-A-C-E.
Boy:	Peace, peace
Together:	Peace, peace
	Peace, peace
	Peace, our prayer
Girl:	May there be peace in your country
Воу:	May there be peace in your country
Girl:	May there be peace all over the world
Воу:	Peace for all the living beings
Together:	Peace, peace
	Peace, our prayer
	Peace, peace

### <mark>15 _</mark> হ্রিন্'ন্র্র'ণী'ঊর্ষণ Culture corner

### र्वेन में| The Tibetans

How many regions are there in Tibet? What are its main mountains? And rivers? To find the essential information about the geography of Tibet and more, go to page 97.

### สัสาซสารราวับ

Unit One (기)

রমানান্মার্ক্ট

### How Much is the Tsampa?

#### ិឆីចារចានាក្យ VOCABULARY

হস্য শ	tsampa (roasted barley
ক্তৃন্দ্র [রু:ন্]	cheese
J.A	apple
ক্র.ধ্য.প্রা	orange
ৰ্নি:মা	milk
শীৰ্ম্ম	kilo
र्भे त्रम्	liter
<u>झे</u> न्ग	half
র্জ্ব-ম	currency, money
হীব:শ্বীনা	Indian rupee
হ্ৰ জীনা	Chinese Yuan
জাইন	US dollar
র্জনা	euro
<u>5591</u>	money/silver
অন্স	or
લ્ડ્:સે:લ્ડ્	various

#### র্ট্রব'রুম্বা Clothes

শ্বর্যা	shoes
र्हेन [:] ज्ञन्।	jacket
র্বনা:৫ছ্ না	t-shirt
ল্ব'র্ম	hat
ন্য্যার্যা	pants
শ্লীশ্বশীক্ষা	scarf

### ^ঊর'অর্নৃঁশ Colors

नुस्र-र्भे	red
$   \int d\eta \mathbf{x} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{y} $	white
र्श्व में	blue
র্জন:প্রি	green
र्श्वेन्द: र्यो	yellow
হ্ৰ স্থ্যন্য	brown
ৰশাইণ	black

#### क्तुन'^{ळे}ग Adjectives

শ্রদার্শ্ব / স্থুদান্ডনা good দিন্দির্শ্বা / বাঁন-চ্চর-র্মা chea ক্ত-ক্তেন্য / চ্চর-র্মা smal মন-র্মা / ক্তন-ক্তন্য man ক্রন্থের্মনাঝা নার্বির্বানর্বিরা old/y

good / bad cheap / expensive small / big many /a little old/young



### 2 রুর'র্গ্রন'দেইন'ন। PHRASES

ગે વેંગ્ગરેગ ર્શેનન્ગ [ક્રાન્ડ]	Give me one kilo, please.
শাৰ্ব-স্শ	Anything else?
< प्देन व्यान्य के से से ना	I don't like it.
ૡ૽૾ૼ૾ૡૻ (ૹ૾ૣૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૠૼૼ)ૹૻૻ૾ૼ૾૾ૼૼૼૼૻૠૼૺ	How much is it? (lit. How much money is it?)
< र भी भारती शामी है या भी न	I have one scarf.

See Vocabulary section p94

3 Close your book. The teacher will read the conversations aloud. How much can you understand?

4 नद्द'र्ध्वन। GRAMMAR Have/don't have ལོད། མིད

The copulas थॅन् and its negative झेन् are used only for the first persons (sg. and pl.). Also, the particle बा is required. I have राष्ट्री We have राष्ट्री बार्थोन्।

I have	בימימקן	We have	รา <b>อาสา</b> พรุ
I don't have	בי <b>מי</b> א <i>ֿר</i> ן	We don't have	ร:ซี: <b>ต:</b> สิรา
Question: 🖻			
Answers: র্থ্ব	ા રાજ્ય ગી.વી.	બેંનુ OR સેનુ નજાાનુ	. ભુ : એ ના

See Grammar Section p87



Work in pairs. Follow the example to take turns in asking questions and answering. Keep changing nouns (use the vocabulary from this lesson).

ફિ <u>ન્</u> ન્સ્ટ ત્ય દે સાથેન્ ન શ્વ	
	(यम् भः) थेंना न्यादें आर्थेना
	(વન્નશ) સેનુ દલ્વ દેસસેનુ



In Tibetan, adjectives come **after** nouns: मज्य हुन्य बेह्न र्झे ही मैं दिन में देन में दन में देन मे

See Grammar Section p84

### ষ্ট্রন্যশৃদ্ধি <mark>> EXERCIS</mark>E

끼 Alternate yes/no answers.
เอิรารราณาหารกราสาระเริ่าเลิ่าสาานี้รายสา
ष्ठिन रमा भी के का में कि राजे के राजे के
الكم بحد عند بحر مربع المربع
ચિન્ 'ત્રમાં સું સું સું સું સું સું સું સું સું સુ
ยิรารราณาผูลาฆ์ที่ทารสรารับสรารับผีรายสๆ
ારેન્ 'સ્ટ'બ'લું સેં' ફ્રેન્ડ 'સ'ન્ ગામ 'સેં' લેવા 'બેંન્' નથા

A On a piece of paper, write down five "Doyou have...?" questions. They must include adjectives. Ask your partner.



रेना रायासेना

#### 

In Tibetan, each set of numbers between 20 and 100 requires a particle:

<b>٩</b> ° (20)	३० (30)	<b>≈</b> 0 (40)	<b>۲</b> ۹ (50)	60 (60)	²¹ 0 (70)	۲۰ (80)	<b>4</b> 0 (90)
કે.ની.≗.	શુવ્ર રુ'ર્ચે	નવે નજુ લે	র্থানস্তু:না	<u> </u>	ন্5্ৰ;হু:ব্ৰি	শক্তুণ্ হৃ:মৃ:	न्त्यु:इ'र्वे

इसामायायार्कें नारेना

Example:

20 <u>3</u> .61	<b>৭</b> % ঈ·পৃ·স্ত ⁻ মাইমা	<b>૧</b> ૧ કે. ભુ. <del>ક</del> . ગાફે×ા	<b>१</b> ३  हे. <b>लु.इ</b> .गुरुब  etc.
૨૦ શુષ્ય છુ	३१ शुम्रा हु में महिम	<b>૨</b> ૧ જ્ઞુસ જુર્ચે ગરે	३३ શुग्र हु ^{: र्भ} गशुग etc.

See Vocabulary Section p94



可 Say the following numbers aloud.

77 53 39 81 26 62 14 95 48 100 16 31 32 el 40 69 2 3 5 e 64 900

^A Work in pairs. Write down five numbers from 1-100 without showing them to your partner. When finished, dictate the numbers to him. Check how many he could write down correctly.

### ור פא יז GRAMMAR Demonstrative pronouns און לן איז שיז שיז שיז שיז

The following demonstrative pronouns can be used in plural by simply adding  $\mathfrak{F}$ :

مثم	this	عمَّ بَعْن	these
Ĵ	that	<u> ने</u> :र्के	those

역 Notice that the following pronouns require 국·풍· in plural:

শ'নী	(that) over there	यमी' (गु:भु:) देखें।	those (apples) over there
ঝ'মী	(that) down there	बग्नी (गु.सु.) दे.क्वी	those (apples) down there
অ'মী	(that) up there	धामी (गु.जु.) ने क्वें	those (apples) up there

### 

Work in pairs. Form sentences according to the example. Don't forget to use the particle ar. Take turns in asking and answering

Example: र्ळं'सु'स'/ ५२े'र्ळे'/गर्केना ->

गी वेर्ग / फ्रेंब र् ज्ञेन: / रण ->

*๛*๎ญฺฆฺ๛ฦิ๛ี๛ฃฺฃ๛ีระวิรเ

ทำผัวๆธิๆาญริสาร์สาร์สาร

1) य'गे'/र्श्हेन:म्रुन:/दग'र्ये'/ ग'र्ळेन

ক্ৰ:শ্ব্ৰুম/৫০০

2) धायी /यासेर ग्री /आ यें र /या केंना

জাইন্নিন্:/१०००।

3) वज्रया/सरार्था/गी कीं/१/गाळेंग

ঈব-য়িম:/१০

4) अभी/गेर्भिषड्र-/श्रेंद'र्भे'/रु-रह्र-/गर्छेन।

देर्कें / भुः क्षें म/ २०१

5) दें'[,]स'/'भे'त्रर'/भू'/ग'र्ळेन्

र्हेन क्रें र:/१९०

6) স্কুঝ'/'শ্বি'লম'/ব্জান্য'লি'লি'লি' ক্টব:স্ক্লান:/१९৫।

### ا2 בואד אימיקיזי^{אַ}ימּקן WHAT DO YOU LIKE?

Find a partner. By using the prompted words below, ask him about the things you like or dislike. Give true answers.



### 13 รัชมิชิพรษ์ผู้สิ่งสรีราชรพ Addressing Unknown People

When the Tibetans address unknown people they take their age into consideration.For example, if you are 30 years old, you address

শ্বশ্বশ্ব Person	^{র্বা} Age		র্ব্বিন্ঞ্বন্থা Address
an old man	(60-70)	->	নান্দ্রনামা / স্ট্রাঁন্টান্দ্রনামা
an old woman	(60-70)	->	জন্মন্দ্রনাম্যা / র্রুর্রিন্দ্রনাম্যা
an elder man	(40-59)	->	ইন্ট্রি / ইন্দেন্স
an elder woman	(40-59)	->	জাতনা / জাতনাম্মন্য
same age male	(30)	->	র্মীনামার্মী / র্মীনামার্মান্দেনামা
same age female	(30)	->	ন্ত:র্মা র্নাবাঝার্রান্মবাঝা
a younger man	(25)	->	ন্তা / ন্ত'ম্পশ্বশ
a younger girl	(25)	->	ন্ত:র্মা / ন্ত:র্মান্সন্যশ
a small girl	(3-10)	->	ন্ত:র্মা / ন্ত:র্মান্সন্যশা
a small boy	(3-10)	->	3
monk		->	স্নু'মার্বিশাঝ'(অদ্যাঝ')
nun		->	জন্ব শেনামা / নত্ত্ব মান্দনামা

### 14 ଞ୍ରୁର୍ୁମଜ୍ୱା > EXERCISE

How would you address these people? Work with the table above and don't forget to take your age into consideration.

عَزَ / هَزَ (۲)	
र्थे। / र्थे। (१७)	
र्देग / र्ह्रेग (१९)	
र्में / सें। (३1)	
र्देग / सेंग (५५)	
र्चे / र्वे (2)0)	

ี่∃ิ่∾'∺หิ'ลู่ี่ี่่ "ลู่ี่สุ่ำ" CHILDREN'S POEM নশান স্থ্রী নামা ইরিমানার্মী মিমের্টুমের্ট্রামা স্কম'শ'র' ক্রুম'নগান 51 श्चे या त्रम् न कु त्य पार न या त য়৻ঀয়৽ঀয়য়৽য়ৣয়৽ঀয়ঀ 51 র্ম্রীনা'নস্কুর'ঞ্জ'র্ক্র'মে'আদ'দ্বান উবিবেন্দা নিয়ান স্থ্রীয়ার্মান নিয়ার নিয়া হা न्दे क्षग ह ส์จาตราสุรารา (MY) HOBBIES

15

Author: Bya mDo Rap rGyes I like to eat tsampa and I also like to drink milk and (eat) yoghurt I like to play football and to compete in wrestling I like to dance and watch movies However, among all of them I especially like to sit in in the class together with my classmates

র্কু:ལ་/রূন to (+verb), lit. e.g. রার্কুন ব্যাণ like to eat

### 16 ਝੈਗ੍ਰਾਗ੍ਰਤਾਬੀ ਛੱਕਕ। Culture corner ਫ਼ਕਾਸ਼ਾਨਨਾਸੇ Tsampa and Tibetan Tea

Have you ever tried Tibetan salt tea? Do you know how to make tsampa? Go to page 99 and learn about it! ลัส[.]สัส[.]รระวับ U





#### NOTE AIDA

In Tibetan, the word "cousin" doesn't really exist. The Tibetans usually call their cousins "brothers" and "sisters".

### 2 ฮูล'ซีร'नईัร'न PHRASES

ᠵᢩ᠈ᡇ᠄ᢂ᠊ᡘ᠄ᡍᢆ᠉᠄ᡏᡃᡬᢋ ᡏᡄ᠊᠋ᢍᡃ᠋ᢜᠽᡃᡆᢩ᠍ᠳᡄ᠋ᢂ᠂ᡘᡃ᠄ᡬᢋ (H) ᡏᡆᡄᡆ᠋᠈ᡆᢂ᠈᠋᠋᠋ᠴᢄ᠗ᡒ᠂ᠴᢂᡘ I was born in Lhasa. He was born in America.

વિંદ્ર બાય આ આ પ્રે સે પ્રાથમિક a job.

(lit. "She doesn't have a particular job." Saying only বিঁন অঅঅধ্যস্থাই – lit. "She doesn't have a job." would have a negative connotation meaning "she does nothing at all")

### 3

**ร**สิ'**พี**่รา

#### About me

My name is Lobsang. I was born in a small village in 1995. I am 16 years old. Our village is called IHa gLu. It is situated in U tsang. Our family is poor but happy. My father is an icon painter. He has many thangkas. My mother doesn't have a job. I have two older brothers and one younger sister. Also, I have a lot of aunts and uncles. Our family is big.

#### Word র্মন্সমা

This word is used at the end of an incomplete list. In English, it stands for **etc**.

E.g.: ૹૣ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૹૹૣૻૻૡૡૼૼૼૻૡૼૡૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૡૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૾૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૾ૺૡ૾ૻૡ૽૾ૡ૾ૻૡ૽૾ૡ Going to school, doing homework and reading books etc. is important.

#### Word 🕄 🛱

Literally means "foreign year" and it is always used before years in the Western calendar.

E.g. मुं से हे रा र्झू न से 2000 (AD)

र्धु संदेर्श्व मु संहेश सून। 2000 BC

Sometimes, the spelling श्रुं वें (lit.common era) is used.

<u>ਅਜ</u>ੁਕਾਸ਼ 'ਤੇ ਤਾਬੋਂ 'ਛੇ'



"मॅन्ग्स्यक्रमां देश्वी सं १८३५ किमा क्रॅन्ग्त्या मुरु श्रुया दुः सं भूग पकें रहिः भाषा से किमा क्रेन्ग्या मुरु श्रुया दुः सं भूग पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या के स् कि से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा से निंदान प्या के स् कि से निंदान प्या कि स् भाषा पकें रहिः भाषा से निंदान प्या के स् कि से निंदान प्या के स् कि से निंदान प्या के से मिन्त्या कि स् भाषा से निंदान प्या के से स् कि से निंदान प्या के से स्वर्ण प्या के निंदान से सिंदान प्या के निंदान प्या कि स् मिन्त के सिंदान से सिंदान के से सिंदान के से स्वर्ण प्या के से स्वर्ण स् सिंदान से सिंदान के से सिंदान के से स्वर्ण प्या के से सिंदान से सिंदान के से सिंदान के से स्वर्ण स्वर्ण से सिंदान के सिंदान से सिंदान से सिंदान के सिंदान से सि

#### Gyalwa Rinpoche

HH the Dalai Lama was born in 1935 in Taktser. He is 82 years old. Taktser is a small village in Amdo province. His birthday is on July 6. He has 16 siblings. However, only four are alive. He also has many nephews and nieces. His residence is in Dharamshala, India. He is considered as the emanation of Chenrezig (Avalokiteshvara).

*  $\mathcal{P} = \widehat{\mathfrak{a}} \, \widehat{\mathfrak{s}} \, \widehat{\mathfrak{s$ 

### פֿק׳דהייַין'קאיימפָראייד׳דֿקן WHEN WERE YOU BORN?

Ask around the class, which year was everyone born. Practice both (H) and non-honorific phrases. Write down the answers on a piece of paper.



7

## កត`ឡ័ក្យ **GRAMMAR**

To Have, There is/are ਕਨ੍ਹਗ ਕੇੱਤ ਤੇਤ

Copulas are used for the 2nd and 3rd persons. Their meaning is "to have" and "there is/ are". The speaker chooses them on account of his familiarity with the thing he talks about:

Examples:

ส์ราณาๆพฤ --- There are yaks in Tibet or Tibet has yaks. => you have been to Tibet and saw them there

र्वेन्'व्यंग्मध्यग्'थेॅन्'रेन्। --- There are yaks in Tibet or Tibet has yaks. => general knowledge

See Grammar Section p82

### ⁸ [ דְּהִיִּשִׁיִשְׁיִלֹיִיִקָשִ WHAT DOES HE HAVE?

In pairs, ask each other questions using second and third persons. Give answers.

हिन्रस्यो नगे कवाया गरे पर्ग र्वितः वः न्द्रे ने ने रे गा वनुग १) हिनः रूप्यो न्यो कारायाया रे पर्य 3) ผู้รารราทิเพาลาลาลงๆาพีรารรางพ 3) हिन्दरणी माठेव में प्य क्रद्र शाय किं र पर् मा माया ) र्विन्तःगी सन्दर्भवे वन्त्राभागां रे प्रतग () नगोः कवः शुः प्ययाः कृः याः नेः प्रन्याः

#### ৺দি'ল) দি'ন্দ্রূল WHAT IS OVER THERE?

Use this sentence and વૈદ્યુ દેવ ચાથે બાયો and શ્વથી to ask your partner.

अमी गा मे लहग

यंगी सें ल विमादन्म

### Introduction



10

### ন্দ'র্গ্রনা GRAMMAR Particle রা

Unit One

This particle emphasizes the person or thing it refers to. In English,  $\hat{\mathfrak{h}}$  isn't usually translated an intonation is rather used for emphasis. We can also translate it as "as for (someone/something)". Example:

ઽ⁻તે `ક્સુૅझ⁻સ'લ્પેલ] As for me, I'm a doctor. OR I'm a doctor. વિંદ તે 'ર્વેન્'લ્પ'લ્ડ્.ગ As for him, he's in Tibet. OR He's in Tibet.

### 11 হ্রান্ডান্রি Exercise

Finish the following sentences:

<u></u>	 	 
5.9.		
759 9		
८:र्ळेंदे'क्त्र'यग्रथ'र्वे'		
aa '		
दरे'हिंस'सके N'दे'	 	 
$\sim \sim$		
न्यत्यः श्चेंत् वे	 	 
~ ~		
عَرْجَ تَقَرَ	 	 



### 12 য়ৄ৾৾୩'중ལ'흴ོད'བརྲནן **>**READING COMPREHENSION

 $\eta$  Answer the questions. Try to answer without looking at the text.

 $9 \sim \tilde{\eta} = x_1 \times \tilde{\omega} = x_1 + y_1 + y_1$ 

A Write yes/no answers to the following statements. Correct wrong statements.

6 สู้าาสารที่าสายูญาพาพสร้าริรา

These particles are used in various situations and are usually translated as **in**, **at**, **to**, and **for**. Their usage depends on the suffixes of the word that comes before them.

If the word finishes in		we use:	example:	meaning:
<u>ح</u> ا.	->	<u>श</u> .	બેંદ્રશ:શુ	completely
ন:/ অহ্বন:র্মনা (no suffix)	->	۲: and ج:	संसर:/संघव:री. सं	at the end in/to Lhasa
८.ट.व.ज.र.ज.	->	5.	केन:नु.	for the purpose (of)
শ'ন' and ব্'হশ	->	2.	শ্ব'দ্য	very

'শ্বদান্দ্র "Free particles"

न'

13

ন্

- -> any suffix, mostly used in written language
- -> any suffix; widely used in spoken language

See Grammar Section p86 for more detailed explanation.

### 6 ଛୁଇ:"ଆଜି। > EXERCISE

Highlight all the **la dun** particles in the texts on pages 46 and 47.

## 17 ষ্ণ্রান্টা > exercise

Fill in the blanks with the particles 3.3.3.5.5. Only one particle per gap is possible.

### ד<mark>ו (</mark>פֿרִיאָרִיחִ) אויאָאיאָדיחִיָּקָאיבֿרן WHEN IS YOUR BIRTHDAY?

Work with your partner. Take turns in asking questions. Ask about your partner's relatives.

हिन्रम्यो भाषा सालग्रामा हिन्सा स्नम्या मुम्रम्या हा

ٱڡٚۧڎٵٛٵڟۊڋ؆؆ٵۭ؉ڟ؆ؽٵڲٵؾ؆ۼ؆؋؇؆ڟڰ؆؆

### 16<mark>-</mark> ਭਿੋ੍ਰ'ਸ਼ਤਾ[,]ਕੋਂ'ਗ੍ਰ'ਛੋਂਤ੍ਰ'ਘੈਂਗ੍ਰ HOW OLD ARE YOU?

Answer the following questions:





 $\underline{\eta}$  In your notebook, write sentences with the words given.

A Write a short story about yourself.

### 18 _ 흫'ㅎ여'흴드'ㅋ득ㅜ| > TONGUE TWISTER

Repeat the tongue twister after your teacher. Then, practice alone. How fast can you get?

#### 19 ইণ্'ণ্ৰূ্র'ণী'^{স্কল}্ধ Culture corner

ຈັ້ງ ຢູ່ສູສາວາງ Tibetan National Flag When was the flag created? What do the symbols represent? For all the details about the Tibetan national flag go to page 100

#### ळेनानसम् VOCABULARY

র্মন ক্রেনারিশ না

Unit two (ጣ)

মারন:ঝদ্রুমা	weekend
નુ <i>ચ</i> ાર્સેન્'સ્ટ્રેન્'ન	free time
J&'851	therefore
N	teeth
শর্নিন্দা	face
শাৰশা	song
র্দৃশান্তব্য	a little
শ্বুব দেশ	poem
দশ্য দশ	exactly
षिर मंदे हैं वृत्त	around the house
র্ষ্ণ শ্রুগাম্যা	cattle
বৰষ্	animal food
Ê.Z	evening
	story

#### ਤੁ^{'ਛੇ} ¶ Verbs

ন্যান	like
מבין	get up
র্বিশাশ্ব: দে প্রদা	have breakfast
9851	wash
डे	play
শাৰশ্ব শাৰ্ক দিশ	sing
<u> ३</u> न्	listen
গ্রনা	to do
ব	eat
র্মান্য	read
বন্ধী	write
ইন্দম্পন্থ:শ্ৰন্থ	help
শ্বৰ্তম'নই	clean
ইনি	give
নই	make
র্ষিমান্দান্ধন্য	do the dishes
য়৾৾ঀ৸য়৾য়৾য়ঀ৾৾য়ঀ	take a shower
임	look, to watch
द्भुम"	drink
न्नि	sleep

### 2 নুশ'ন্টি'লুব'^{ক্ট}'ণ Temporal Adverbs

<i>૫</i> ૻઽૢ૱૿ઌ૽૾ૼૼ૱ૡઽૻ	always
वसंःकुवा	normally
<u>र्शः</u> ज्जून	usually
พรพรา	often
মর্ক্রমম'মর্ক্রমম'ম।/র্ক্রমম'ম।	sometimes
भूनरुभूनरु-शु/ भूनरु-रे।	occasionally
<u> </u>	never
5.551	(not only) but also
(देवें·)हेरुप्य:/शु	after (that)
5°81	now
অমামমান্য / বাঅমাবার্মিরান্য	around (time, place)

Normally, I have a lot of free time on the weekend and that's why I like it very much. I usually get up at 8 a.m. I have breakfast and after that I brush my teeth and wash my face. Then, I often see my friends. Sometimes, we play games together, sing songs, or listen to music.

#### Pluralizer ज्ञुज्ञज्ञ

simply means the "s" at the end of nouns. E.g. तु. boy - तु:ह्वराषा boys

#### Verb+ =1/=1

When a verb is followed by T or T, it acts as a gerund (-ing). In Tibetan, it is very common in titles (of stories etc.) Examples:

শ্বন্শ ভাষা Eating ink (name of a Chinese story) দাৰশ দাৰ্দি দেশ দাৰশ স্বাদ দেশ বি দেশ বি দাৰশ জীৱা Singing and listening to songs are my hobbies.

I have lunch with my family at one o'clock. After that, I read a bit. Sometimes, I write poems.





In the evening around six, I take a shower. All of our family has dinner around 7:30. Sometimes we eat (drink) thukpa and sometimes momo. We don't watch TV in the evening much. However, we listen to our grandfather's stories. We all go to sleep around 9 p.m.





### ବ**ട**'ର୍ମ୍ରିମ୍ GRAMMAR Connective particles ଶି'ଶ୍ରି'ଥି'ରି'ଭି

The particles බ්.ඞ්.ඞ්.ඞ්.ඞ්.කී.ඔ් are the 6th case (genitive) particles. By connecting two nouns, they show possession in English, and hence are translated as **'s** or **of**. Their usage depends on the final letter of the preceding word.

final letter	particle	example	translation	
याम्नः यी		ॷ ^{ॖॺॎॸॱ<b>ॺऀ</b>ॱऄॖॕॱळेवा}	Temple's gate.	
ব'ম'ম'শ'	হী	ૢૢૢૢૢૼૹૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ	Choethar's hair.	
ন্'ন'শ' শ্রী		ଔଷାୟସ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ଥି ଅନ୍ଥାରୀ	mother's chupa	
		• • • •	around the	
୍ୟ or no	વા થ	୲୳ମ <b>୕ନ୍ଦି</b> ଂସ୍ୱାଭାଷାଂସ୍ୱାର୍ଭିଶ୍ୱ	house (lit.to the	
suffix		_{ସ୍ୟି} :ସ୍ୱାର୍ଯ୍ୟ ଅଭିକା	right and left <b>of</b> the	
			house)	

Note: In spoken Tibetan, the particles मैं) ग्रे जे are all pronounced as [मे].

🖎 See Grammar Section p89

#### 8 ଞ୍ରୁର୍ଦ୍ୟୁତ୍ତି **EXERCISE**

Fill in the blanks with the 6th case particles.

র্নি	ইন্য
ক্রুন্স'মর্ক্র'	वर से
สิ์ กลร	[A.S. 74]
<u> </u>	র্ব্যন্ম
τ <u></u>	ন্দ্র্যু
ক্র্:শন্	न्नून:केवा
ক্র্রীন্দ্র-দেন.	ন্মন্যাম
5'	শনামা

NOTE NOTE

### ন্যুদ্রান্টাদ্

Also spelled गुत्तग्वर्शत्। गुत्तरुदा गुत्तरुदा गुत्तरुदा It stands for "holiday" or "vacation" but in col. language, people use it for "weekend".

### ষ্ট্রনি:র্ক্রে:বাঁণ্টিশ্য:ব

9

### 🖛 ៉េឡ័ក្យ GRAMMAR

### Agentive particles গীম'শ্রীম'শ্রীমা

Unit two

Agentive particles শীশশৌ্ শাঁথী শাঁথী শাঁথী ৰাভ the 3rd case (agentive) particles. They mark the **agent**, i.e. "the one who performs an action" in order to tell apart the subject from an objects.

The particles can be translated as **by**, but usually no translation is required.

Their usage depends on the final letter of the preceding word.

final letter	particle	example	translation
मान्त	মীক্ষা	૱ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱૱ <b>૽૾ૼૣ૾ૼૼૼ</b>	Lobsang buys Tsampa
ব্'ঝ'ম্'ঝ'	ন্মীস্মা	ૠૢૡૼૻૡૺઽૻૡૼ <b>૽૾ૼૺૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺ૾૽ૼૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૼ૿ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૻ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૺૼ૿૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૻ૾ૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૺૺૼૻ૾ૢૼૼૼૼૼૺૻ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૺૻ૾ૢૼૺૻ૾ૺૼ૿૾ૺૼૻ૾ૺૼૻ૾ૺૼૺૻ૾ૺૺૼૻ૾ૺૺૼૻ૾ૺૺૼૻ૾ૺૺૼૻ</b>	Tenzin eats. (lit. the food is eaten <b>by</b> Tenzin.)
ন্'ন'শ	ন্ট্ৰশ্		
ମ୍ବ or no suffix	-ম্বা দ্বীম্বা	ম্বাউন্বর্শ্ধি <b>শ/ঞ্জিম</b> দেন:ম: ম্বাউন:ম:মর্ছা	Older sister cleans the house. (lit. The house is cleaned <b>by</b> {my} older sister).

Note: In spoken Tibetan, the particles मैं मुंग्रें ग्रें के are all pronounced as मिंग See Grammar section p97

## 10 ষ্ট্রন্রান্টা > exercise

Fill in the blanks with the 3rd case particles.

### 11 ষ্ণ্রন্যশৃজ্বী > EXERCISE

Which particles are right? Correct the wrong ones.

เห ซา ซา ซิ ๊ สู ซา
<u>ڲٚڗڲڗڛۥڟڲٳ</u>
રુ'ર્ચે' છે 'લ્વે' નેન
માંભન્માત્રા ગ્રીત્રા સુવ્ય
ભ્રાત્મનામાં શે આવે
र्नेत्'वी'ङव्य'म।
~ਜ਼ੑਗ਼੶ਜ਼੶ <del>੶</del> ਸ਼ੑੑੑਜ਼੶ਸ਼ੑ੶ਫ਼ਫ਼੶ਖ਼ਖ਼੶੶ਗ਼ੑਫ਼ੑੑੑੑੑਸ਼ੑਖ਼੶ੑੑੑ
ॸ॔ॺॕऻ॔क़ॱॸऺॱॸऀऻॱॺऻॾॖॕॺऻॱख़ॺऻॱॺॎॸॱऻ
नश्च्रत रहेत कुत्रा

### 2 हुन्ग्वी > EXERCISE

Highlight all the connective and agentive particles in the texts on pages 50 and 51 and translate them.

### 13 র্মুনাঙ্গ্রন্জা - Help with reading

Very long sentences are common in Tibetan language. Therefore, it is useful to know when one needs to pause.

As a rule of thumb, pause after particles. There are many rules, so let's only have a look at some of them: Example:

नईत्रप्युश्रःश्चेनःम्रुत्रश्वरायार्थेरायीपर्यु

Tsondu is coming home from school.

Tsomo is giving food to Tashi.

ઽલે[·]માભ્યગૃષાં તે ખેર'નર્કે સેર'સાર્પેર સામર'ર સાંગ્રુપ્ર' ખેર'નર્કે છે રું છે ખેત

My father is a carpenter. In the future I will become

a carpenter too.

नेनज्दी न्द्र हे राजे निर्मा क्षा नाम के कि

I bought this book and gave it to him.

### দ্বি'ল্লন্স। – ORDINAL NUMBERS

Forming cardinal numbers in Tibetan are very easy – by adding ^{ref} to numbers. Number one is the only exception.

1st নৃদার্শ্বা 2nd শৃষ্ট্রিশ্বাল্যা

- 3rd শশ্জুম'শ
- 10th নন্ত্রন্য
- 41st নৰি'নম্ভৰি'মাউমা'মা
- 97th ব্লু'নস্তর্শী'নব্র'শ

15

**দ্রশ্র্রা GRAMMAR** Telling the time রু'র্ক্টন'শ'শ্ব'ব

In order to tell the time, cardinal numbers are used.





Say the following times in Tibetan.

e:30	<i>११:</i> ९९	E:94	^{2]} :eo	10:30	૧:ૡ્ય	१९:१९	૱:"૧	1:36
5:25 a.	m.	3:15	p.m.	2:48	8 a.m.	7:	30 p.m	
12:00		4:51	p.m.	7:00	) a.m.	2:	39 p.n	٦.

े छिँमा'मरू	শন ⁻ র্মীআমার্থ HELP WITH VOCABULARY
never	র্ষণ্ডদা* /  বাউবা'গ্রদা(বাউবাণ্ডশ)
always	aauwa' / हनायम् / नार्भाधेव व भरा

*In poems in particular.

Examples:

19

<หารุศัราชังสุขานรายานๆ หลังที่หัรๆ I always cook in the evening.

ડ્ય દ્વગેંદ સેંગ્લ વાય તે સાંસાય સાથે છે. I never cook in the evening.

### 18 স্ত্রন'শ্রি - EXERCISE

 $\P$  Practice "always" and "never" with your partner according to the example.

Use the verbs you have learned so far.



To form a sentence in the present tense, follow the pattern:



#### Examples:

ત્ર્યઃસેંવાઃસેંવાઃવર્કેઃવાેઃબેંન્ I make momos (or l'm making).

ફિન્સ્ટ વીશ્વ હેવા લોગો છે. તેમ આ Do you write letters (or are you writing)?

વિં'ઐશ્વગ્વાનશ'વાર્કે દ'વૈ સે 'વર્ડ્ વ He doesn't sing (or he's not singing).

^ઌૡ૽૾ૼૣૻઽૹૻૹૼૡૼૼૼૡૻૻૡ૽૾ૹૻૺૹૼૡૻૹૻૹ૾ૢૢૼૼૡૼ૽૽ૢૼૺૻ૾ૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૢૻૼૼૼૻ૽ૣ૾૾ૺૡ૽ૼૼૢૻૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૣ૾ૡ૽ૼૺૢૻૻ૾ૡ૽ૼૼૻૢ૽ૻ૽૾ૡ૽ૼૼૻૢ૽ૻ૽૾ૡ૽ૼ૱ૢૻૡઌ૱ (is praying).

See Grammar Section p93

الكَح حَدَ عَامَ الله عَدَ عَلَي عَامَ عَدَ عَلَي عَل



র্ম্নিন'র্কের'শন্টিশ'শ্য

Match the verbs with pictures.

Unit two ((끼)



Form any sentences (aff., neg., question) with the verbs.

1.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	

### 21 ଞ୍ରୁମ୍ୟୁମ୍ବି EXERCISE

Translate the following sentences into Tibetan.

1 Tashi usually listens to songs.	
2 Does Nyima clean her teeth in the evening?	
3 I don't often do the dishes.	
4 Do they sometimes play?	
5 We don't usually read books.	



 $\neg$  Choose five sentences in the present tense from the text on page 50 and make them negative.


Translate the sentences.

What time do you

get up?	
clean your teeth?	
have lunch?	
play games?	
go to sleep?	
cook?	
watch the tv?	

শ Use the sentences to ask your partner.

ઽૹૡ૽ૺઽૼૼૡૢૹૻૼૼૼૼઽ૱ૡ૽ૺૠૡ૾ૹૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૡ૱ઌ૽૿ૡૻૼૼૼૼ

### ³ ח'דֿ'פֿק'זַי װאד אד אד איפֿק' אואד אד אד איפֿק' 1 אואד אד אד איפֿא איז איז איז א

In pairs practice saying the sentences and answers.





#### 물 Story telling

What do you do on Saturdays? Write about your day.



### নী দীন্দ্র নি হিলা মিলি বিদ্যালয় বিদ্যালয় বিদ্যালয় বিদ্যুদ্ধ বিদ্যুদ্ধ বিদ্যুদ্ধ বিদ্যুদ্ধ বিদ্যুদ্ধ বিদ্যুদ

र्वेन्'र्वे'रें के मुन्य्। Tibetan Lunar Calendar

The Tibetan calendar is very different from the western one. Visit the Culture Corner on page 100 and find out more!

# র্র্যনাক্তরাগ্রিয়ায়া Unit two

(四)

L.92 J. 192

**Our House** 

high

thick

long

warm

clean

dark

middle

beautiful

2

	ີສີຫາຫຼອງສາ	VOCABULARY	मुन'ळेंग	Adjectives
	الديراء آخم	VOCADOLAINI	ঝইন্থ্	high
MT.71	hc	ouse	হৃ:ড্হ:	very
শার্হ'রু	f riv	/er	মন্থ্ৰনা নি	thick
বশাশ্য:ক	লৈ fo	rest	ज्ञु :ळेव्'र्भ	í large
ণ্ণুম'ন্ ম'র্ন্য	ga	arden	श्रेू र हे रेग	beau
		ower	প্ৰি.গ্ৰ	very
র্ষিনা'ক্টম	flo	oor	र्रेट-से	long
হ:শ্ব	а	place where one eat	হ ইন্ শ্	warr
ষন'র্ক্তন	i kit	tchen	ন্য্র্ন্ ম'র্ম্বা	cold
দেন্-মিন	ro	om	ৰি:হ্ৰশ্বশ্য	very
মর্ম্র্র স্	j gi	Jest	শার্তন'মা	clea
নশ্বৃন্'শ	l a	place where one sits	বশান্ড্ৰনা	dark
3997.195		edroom	देवीर:देवी	جتا mide
য়৾৾ঌ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾ঀ	רא sh	rine room	6	
শ্বদ্ধান্ত্র	i lo	rd Buddha		1
শ্রু'শশ্	pi	cture (H)		124 24
<u>M</u> .421	st	atue		
থ্যনাখ্য হ		istoms		for the second
র্ন্বনা-ক্টব	gr	ound floor		3 K
শ্রী শু:জিন্	i wi	ndow		the second s
ন্দ্রী	fe	male yak		
सर्दे:/ हे	۲ cro	oss b/w an ox & female y	/ak	
শাধ্যশ	ya	k		Contractor
শ্বন্দ	sh	eep	999 	State of
শ:শা	go	bat		No.
লিন:দা	fie	eld		June 1
র্ন্ধিয়াশ		ttle		
শ্বন্ধিশ্বা		oth		pple trees clo
শ্বামান্দ্র	য়ন se	mi-nomadic farming fam	nily (*	रामान्दायाईगाहे
		sitions	25	5.4.2.2
- ngin	' ^ঊ	sitions	5	โล้ พรุราจสามเซ

at the foot of

on the right (side)

in front of

behind

close to

in (side)

apple trees close to the garden. ୲୳ଽ୕୳୕ଽଽ୵୶ୖୢଌ୕୩ୄୖୢ୶ୠ୲୴୲ୠ୶୲ଽଽ୲୳ଽୖଈ୩୲୴ୢଈୄଽୖୖୖୖୖ୴୵୲ୄ୲୳ଽୖଈ୩୲ଌ୕ଽ୕୲୶ୡ୕୲ୡ୵୲ୡ୶୲ଌ୳୲ଌୖଽୖୡ୲ ५गुत्रायमें न' भाषात्र संग्लेश मुन्स से ले द्वारा के के साम भाषा ने के साम भाषा के साम भाषा के साम भाषा के स देवा के साम भाषा साम भाषा के साम साम भाषा के साम साम भाषा के साम साम भाषा के साम भाषा क <u>ષત્ર સેવા અવા બેંચ તે અર્વે તર્ગ નક્ષત્ર</u> พลิเครามิยาราริรา มยัสารัญารมู่รมายายรายรายรายาริลิเสราชู้รายาริราย เกรามิยาราชสา นั[•]พัร ซีร ลิ พร นั• นีร นิ วิ รารการสีรามสีรายกาลิๆาพีรา มสีรายกาลกามกา অমার্চবান্তমাক্তদানার্শনা ઽઽૻ૱ૻ૱૱૱૽૽૽ૢૺૹૢૻઌઽૻઽઽૼૢૢૣૻૡઽ૽ૡ૾ૻઽૢૢ૽૾ૡઽ૽ૐઽૻ૱ૻ૽ૣ૾૽ૼૼૻૼૻ૱૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡૢ૾ઌૢૹૻૡૻૡ૾ૻૡૻ૱૾ૺૡઽૻ র তদ পার্ড দ মার্ মার্য দিন্



### ราซีสิบคราย Our House

ઽૻૻૼૺૼૼૼૼ૽૾ૡઽૻઽૻ૱૽ૼૼૻઽૼ૱૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૡૻૻ૽ૼૡૼૡૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૡ૽ૼૡૼૡ૽ૻ૱ הביבות. ক্রুস'ড়' রবামার্ক্রমান্ডাত্তদাম প্রবার্শী বিশা শূদার্থী দি দ্রহ:ঘরি:ব্রাঅঝা · ध्रुयान्दिः वन्त्रः के किंगाः श्रे नाह ર્શે 'ભૈન' હું અન 'ર્શે 'ચેના' ન ' નુ ન ' સુયાં મહે ' ભ્રાચ ' ભાગ ' ભુલે ' ભેન'

high mountain. A big river winds its way in front of the house. There is a very thick forest behind the house as well. On the right side of the house is a large garden. beautiful flowers. Also, there are a few tall

ন্দ্রন্দ

শ্বন্ব:হা

ক্রুন:দ্রা শালপ্রা

নন্মার্ম'ন্যো

ৰ্দ:শ

The house itself has two floors and eight rooms. Kitchen is the warmest one of them. Since the weather in winter in Tibet is very cold, we use the kitchen as a place to cook, eat and so on.

The best room is the guest room. Any guest who comes, stays in that room. Since this room is big, it accommodates many people. Among the four bedrooms, (my) mother and father's bedroom is the biggest one; then mine, and then my younger brother's



bedroom is slightly smaller than mine. We also have a shrine room. In the shrine room, there are pictures and statues of the Buddha and lamas. Hence, as per the Tibetan custom, the shrine room is kept very clean.

ᠵ᠌ᢄᠯ᠕᠕᠕᠋᠊ᢌᡆ᠋ᢌ᠈ᡬᡆ᠋ᢃᡷ᠋ᡣ᠈ᡱᢆ᠋ᡎᢁ᠈ᢐᠵ᠊᠋᠋ᡚᡃᡳ᠋ᡪ᠋᠘ᡬ᠋ᢆᡆ᠋᠄ᡱ᠋᠋ᡜ᠄ᡱᡆ᠋ᢩᡱ᠋ᡎ᠋ᡱ᠋ᢩᠴ᠗ᢋ᠄ᡏ᠋ᢅᡃ᠍᠋ᡅᢅᡪ᠂ᡃᢧᠵ᠋ᢩ᠕᠍ᢩᢋ᠋ᡁᡵ᠋ᠵᢂᠵ᠄ᡏ᠋᠕ᡪ᠂ᢌᠮ᠊ᢋᡢᡙᠲᠵ᠙ᢅᠮ᠋



ઽૻ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡૻૡૼૼૺ૽ૣૻૡૢૻઽૻૡૢઽૻ มรี มั เฉลิรเฉลิร নাইঝ'ননা নার্মা মই:রিনা নাৎমনা ক্রি নি দ্রা থ্যাঁণ্ট'ণা সমহলেক্ষার্থিনা गणगां के के में शानना ना ना सुग  $\hat{a}$   $\hat{a}$   $\hat{a}$ ฉลิ'รร'ม*โ*ร้' র্রা নার ঝা না আনা অমা ক্রু না না আন আ <u></u>&ेत्र'य्य भार सर्हे के गाउं स कुर य র্জনা <u>दे'नवित्र'र्द्स् जित्र'विरायण्यर</u> 5' ፚ፝ૼ੶ਗ਼ਫ਼៝ੑੑੑੑੑਸ਼੶ਸ਼੶ਸ਼੶ਸ਼ੑੑ ૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૱૱૱૱૱૱ ^{มาว}ส์ๆ'ฮิ่า ซิ่าร่าร์ แ

We keep the cattle on the ground floor. The ground floor is large, but

since there aren't many windows, it is dark. We have two small female yaks, three middle-sized *mDzo mo*, six *mDzo*, five big yaks, twenty sheep, and ten goats. Yak is the biggest one, goats and sheep are the smallest. Female yaks and *mDzo mo* are both smaller than yaks. Yaks and *mDzo* are alsmost of the same size, but *mDzo* are a bit smaller than yaks. We have many fields, some small, some big. Since we have both cattle and fields, we are called a semi-nomadic farming family.

# র্র্মিন'র্জ্ব'ন্ট্রিম'ন্য Unit two (শি)

3



#### **Our House**

### ন্দ:গ্র্র্রা GRAMMAR

#### Nominalizer 🔦

The construction "verb (fut.) + ◄" changes the verb into a noun phrase which shows a location or goal of an action. Possible translations are:

"a place to (do)" or

"a place where one (does) sth" Examples:

> ৰ্শ্মীশ্য a place to go শ্বন্থা a place where one studies

Constructions with [™] are very common in Tibetan. Sometimes, they can be translated with nouns:

त्रयाः bed ("a place to sleep")

轰직 직 Container ("a place to put things {into}")

### 4 ষ্ট্রন্র'শঙ্গি > EXERCISE

Match the nouns with their Tibetan counterparts.

নস্থন্ শ	meeting point
સું સ સું મ સા	hiding place
माहुन्न:स्थ	playground
व्यन् हिन्दे रे रे	shop
দইন্ধান্ধ	room
พิสาญ	gas station
हेन्-आ	mug
हें.या	ticket office

#### 5 🚽 🗟 קיקאָדידֿקאיאלקאין HELP WITH VOCABULARY

In Tibetan, if you want to express some are good, some are bad" etc., use the following structure.

Adj + opposite adj + લ્ઽ^{-સે}'લ્ડા

ಹે જુન વર્ડ સે વર્ડા .. some are big, some are small ષ્યગા સુગાવડ સે વડા some are good, some are bad સરૂગ સગવડ સે વડા some are thick, some are thin

Shorter form of [વ્ઽ્ડાંચેલ્] is also used: ત્ર=ઽ'ઽ૱'વઽ્ડાંચેલ્] some are good, some are bad રેઽ'.શુઽ'વઽ્ડાંચે'વઽ] some are tall, some are short ચઽ'.શુઽ'વઽ્ડાંચે'વઽ] some are more, some are less



### 6 বি'শ'শন্দ'ন্দ্রণ WHERE IS IT?

	on/above
শ্বন্থা	over
देना हु।	under/below
ন্দ্রাঝ:ন্যু	close/near(by)
ক্র-জ	behind
શ્વ-દ્વ-દ્	in front of
वर-रा	in(side)
રી.ખ	out(side)
শব্দর্শনার্শির	around
ુ <b>⊤</b> .∽	aside



นาณฑุฆานการณ์

Our House

#### Word **নত**মা

The word जरुश is an abbreviation of word जरुश. su which means "to contain". It isn't usually translated, and serves only to end the list of things or people that are mentioned in a sentence.

For example:

² में र भारत के मान्द्र कि र मी आ परि र म क अ से न अ मी पद म HH the Dalai Lama and his entourage are leaving. ଽ୳ଽଽଽୡୄୢୢୢୢ୶୶୶ଌୖଽ୳ଽ୳୶୶୲ୠୄ୶୳ଽଽ୳ଌ୶୲୳୶୲ୢୣଌୣୢୢ୶୲୳୲ୡୢୣୡୣ୵୲୳ୖ Me, my brother, mother and father are eating thukpa. ଢ଼ୢ୲୳୵ଽୖଈ୲୳୵୳ୢଢ଼୲୶୲ୖ୴ୠ୲୳୰ଡ଼୶୲ୖୄୄୄୄ୷୰୶୰୷୲ୄ୷୶୲୴୲ୄଌୣ୷୲୳୷ଡ଼୕୶୲ Gods, semi-gods and humans prostrate to the Buddha.

#### <u>छ</u>न्द्र माबि **EXERCISE**

Write down three sentences using the word নতম্য

#### ল্র'র্ট্রনা GRAMMAR 10

Adjectives-Comparative, Superlative

Forming comparative and superlative is easy in Tibetan. To form the comparative degree, add ন' to the adjective, and for superlative add ব্ৰিশ.

adjectives	comparative	superlative
1. The second se	<u>بر ب</u>	<u>بال</u> بوحد ال
<b>कु</b> न्-:कुन्-'	<u>रू</u> द:न	ড়ৢ৾৾ৼ৾৽ঀ৾৾৽য়
নাশ্ব-মা	নাশ্ব-শ	নামন:র্শ্বমা

In order to compare two things, use the particle প্রমা which stands for than. Notice that the sentence structure is different from English!

My car is faster than yours.र्दे क्वर्य वर्षे राष्ट्रेन रर्त्य के कि ้ดใจ้สา**ฒลา**ผญัญญาจารที่สารริรา

Yeshi's bag is heavier than mine. ઽવે'હિંગ'ઍ'**વચ્ચ**'બે એ શે સિંગ સાથે ગાયના

See Grammar Section p84

11

여ळད་ྒྱོལ་སྒྱོད་བརོད་ CONVERSATION PRACTICE

Ask your partner the following questions. Practice prepositions.

1	া:শ্বিদা	21	

- 1. हिन्दर्गोर्डेगर्डे ते झूर भाषा रे भूत
- 2. ยิรารราทิ เลิ่าเลา เการาร์รา
- 3. ผิรารรทำเศราร์นิสราณาทาริาษัรเ
- 4. हिन रत्यी याप्य यापें क प्य या रे प्रतय
- 6. गाईंगायगायरणी अनुवायणारे वनुग

র্ম্নন:ধ্রুদা	Р

- 1. रे. भे. अर. भारा रे. पर्य
- 2. मर्केन मन्द्र मार्ग में प्रमा
- 3. ผิรารราทิ สูราจางงาร์าที่รา
- 4. भ्रार्भवेकेप्रमासायामार्भपत्म
- 5. เกราร์เลิวๆผู้สามาราวรา
- 6. รุษิริจาสมมาทางราพิรา

#### <u>স্ত্র'ন্ট্র'র্'র্'র্' WHO</u> IS TALLER?

Ask your partner questions. With the adjectives provided.

	าฏ:จิฆ:พิ:จิฆ:พฺฆ:รี	रेन-म-पनुम
<u>શ</u> ુ5:41	ર્સે સા	द्धुमा से
গ্র্বি-শ্	षर:से	<u> নুরুর্মি</u>
মন্থ্রনা'র্মা	শ্বন:শ্বন	भूवा रेग्

# 12

#### ন্দ:গ্র্রিনা GRAMMAR

### Because it is/has थॅंन्डिंन्ड्या श्वेन्डेन्ड्या

The word ৰ্জন্ stands for **since**, **as**, or **because**. It can be used for all persons but only in a combination with a verb.

ૡ૽ૻૼૣૼૻઙૻૻૻ૾ૻૣૺ because I/you/ they have, because s/he has ચેઽ્ૻઙૻૻૻૻૻૣૻ because I/you/they don't have, because s/he doesn't have

भेत् उँन् because I am, you,/ we/ they are, s/he is

ૡિં'ભ'ન્ઽુલ્પ'અદ'ર્સે' એન્'ર્જંદ'રું 'ગયા 'ગેંદ' જે વે 'ગેં' જે' ગે 'ચ'રેન્ He doesn't buy expensive things because he doesn't have much money.

ત્ર⁻તેંન્'સ'લેંન્'ર્સ્સન્'ભેંચ'યેંન્' Since I'm Tibetan, I speak Tibetan.

बॅ'ञ्चून् न्यस्तेन् 'रुंन्' हिन्' न्न्न' व्य र्ने नाम् न्य रेन्' सुन' ग्रे'स' नेन् She can't help you because she is not a doctor.

#### Other verbs

ત્ત્વત્ત ર્જે શ્વાનગવ વે ભેંત્ રંત્ર ત્વાર સ્થેત્ છું ખેંત્ I live in Dharamsala because I like Buddhism.

ન્શ્રા લક્ષા માં ગુેનું ગુે સેનું જંન્ડ્ગૃલ્ડ્લા સન્સ્પે લ્વુગ્ I have a lot of problems because I don't work.

### 13 ষ্ট্রন্রান্টা > exercise

Finish the sentences.

૬ૹૡૹૻૹૻૻૡ૽૽૱ૢૻૹ૽૾૱ૻ૱ૼૻ
ઽૻૹૣ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻઌૼૺૡૻૻઌૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૺ૾૾ૺઌૻ૾૾ૻ૾૾૾ૺ૾૾૾ૻ૾૾૾૾૾ૺ૾૾૾ૻ૾૾૾૾૾૾૾૾
૬ૹૻૹૣ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼઌૺૹૻ૾ઌ૽૿ૢ૽ૹ૽ૺૢૼૻઙ૽ૼઽ
८'ष'र्टुष'सेन्'हॅर'
ઽૻૹૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૢૡૻૻ૾૾ૼૡૻૻ૱ૢૻૼૻૼૻ૾૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾ૻ૾૾ૻ૾ૻ૾૾૾ૻ૾૾૾૾ૻ૾૾
૬'ર્સેન્'શ્વ'લ્શે'થી'ર્થેન્'ર્કેન્'

### 14 ଞ୍ରୁର୍ମ୍ୟାର୍ଶ୍ୱ - EXERCISE

Form sentences with the verbs provided and ལོད་/མོད་་

ন্দ্রী	ন্ত্রিশা	শাধ্যশা	শট্টন	ইনি
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				

# าร'ขัว GRAMMAR

15

Terminators শ্লন্থা

Terminators signify the end of a sentence, section, or a thought. They are only used in literary language. See grammar section.

Suffix	Terminator	Example
न्ग.	ন্	···নন্যার্ঘ <u>়</u>
5.	में हे	ייקפריל ו
5		
र्व.	ন্টা কা	धेव र्दी
ন'	ন্	
ম'	র্মা	સુસ'ર્સે
<i>र</i> '	Ť	
ন্য.	a	चुल [.] वे
<u>م</u> ۲.	R.	র্মির্ম্বার্ম্
ন'রশ	র্টা	<u>'''ক্</u> তুন্ন'(নৃ:)র্চ্
<i>ה</i> יקד אדמיאקן	र्वे	

### 

### র্ন্টান্যুন্থা Potala

Potala is the biggest palace in Tibet which was built in the 7th century. Go to the culture corner page 101 and find out more !

#### ซิๆ ๆ สุรา VOCABULARY

<u> র্ন্নান্টরান্যার্টরান্যা</u>

Unit two ((ག)

গ্রাম্য-রেয়্রী-্রামা	reporter
শ্ <del>থ</del> াজনশ্ব monk	
ন্ব-রুদ-ন	ordained person
<b>ঊ</b> 'ব্∛া	based on
র্বিশাশ্ব:র্ক্টশাশ্য	morning puja
র্ক্রিশ্যন্	debate ground
ৰ্ণ্ইৰ:শ্ৰীশাশ্য	classmate
য়ৢ৾৾৻৵৾৾৾৾৾৻	monastic college
न्में बिना	classes/teachings
न्ने का	pecha (a Tibetan-style book)
જ્ઞુ 'મૈચ્ય	religious service
สารีรุฐาม	future
वृद्र:ढेंग	Buddhism
क्षेग'म्यम	rule
वन-श्चेन्ग	homework
ळॅव रेगाम	scientist
ยู้ ซึ่าพ	society, community

#### ਤੁ^{`ਛੋ}ਧ Verbs

র্থ্বিনা [বশ্বন]	live, stay, sit
ন্দ্রীয	gather
<u> </u>	keep, protect, observe
न्येवा	give, take

### 2 রুর'র্ষ্ট্র<u>'</u>দেইন'না PHRASES

ਸ਼ੋੱ 'ਖੁੱੱ ਕ ਹੈ। memorize न में 'ਬੇन 'बु। receive a teaching न में 'ਬੇन 'बु। become a geshe धेमा क न महिन। take an exam श्वेमा प्यस श्वन। obey the rules ज्ञु क पेव। get a good score/grade ने स मन न गिर्मा have to go **ٵۭ؆ؚ؉ؚٮڟٞٳٓڔ؉ٳ**ٳڲ٦ؚ٦ڋ؞ٙڋ؆ۦؾۣڋ؉ٵۿؚٵڛٛۜٛڟ؆ڣٛؾۿڟ؆ڂڟؚٞڟ؉ڣۘ؆ڟؚڟ؆ڣ؆ۼ؆ ٵڋ۬ٵڋٵڮٛڔڂڟؚٚ؆ؽ؆ؽ؆

**Reporter**: As a monk (ordained person), what do you have to do every day in the monastery?

**Monk**: Since we live in the monastery, we have to get up at six o'clock. We have to go to the morning puja and debate. Also, I and my classmates have to go to the Buddhist philosophy classes, memorize pecha by heart etc. Similarly, we have to gather every evening for a religious service and debate.

Reporter: What things would you like to do in the future?

**Monk**: In the future, not only would I like to become a good geshe, but also introduce dharma to many people because I consider it important.



ฑุณา เสา เมื่า เมื่อ เม नगेंगरी: भेंग

<u>ଽୄୖୄ</u>ୄୄୄ୶୕୵ୣଽ୶ୖ୲ୖୄଌୣ୶୲୴ଢ଼୶ଽଢ଼ୖ୶ଢ଼୶ୄୖୢୡ୕୷ୢୢୖ୴ୠୖୄ୶ୠ୲୴୶୲୴ୠୖ୳ୢୄ୶ଽ୲ଽୖଵୄ୕</u>୶୲ <u>कें रेता</u> ने नवित वहें त मुन्दरे अ मन्दर् वर्मे न्वी शाम न्दर तुद क्रिं दा मार গ্রী:ঊর্না <u>รุเฉลิเรล์โพเซ็เพิร</u> พิศาสรรทร์ระพูกพ.ฮ.ส.ส.ส.พ.ศ.พ.ศาร์เพิสรรศัพเซ็เพิร 

कें रेटा राय देंट्या मराकं रेगाय भाषा में विगाकगय क्षेत्र होंगी पर्ग रार्ग्र *ब्हॅ* अन्नित्र अन्तर संस्टर्भे प्टर्ने न स्वित् या साम ર્વેન્'ર્યવે'શું જેંગુર્ચાવ્ય વતુ র্ষিগাম্বস্কুন র্রা গী বেন্ গা

Reporter: As a student, what do you have to do at school?

Tsering: As a student I have to obey the school rules. Likewise, I have to attend the classes and write homework. I must get a good score on my exams, too.

Reporter: What do you want to do in the future?

Tsering: I want to become a good scientist. Also, I want to go to many places in the world and be beneficial to the Tibetan society.

#### Word Man

When combined with a verb, the word MAN means when or at the time. Instead of প্রনম, you can also use र्रुअ' or केंश' which carry the same meaning. র:শ্লুনমা

র:র্ম্মা র'র্ক্টঝা(lit)

when (I) eat, at the time of eating



Translate into English.

त्रदेग्रूगस्रेन्द्र्यायां प्रतिन्त्राप्रियां गर्डत्रासं कर्त्रे गी रेन्।

ઽૹૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૻૻૹૣૻૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹ૽ૻ૱<u>ૼ</u>

ઽૻૼૹ૾ૼ૽૾ૡૢૻ૽ઌૢૻૡૻ૱ૹૻૻૹૣ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૡ૽ૻૡૼૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૼૡૻ૽ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૼૡૻ૾ૢ૽ૻૹ૾ૣૼૼૼૼૻૼ૱ૼૹ এমিন বন দেয়া থাঁনা আঁনা

#### חיליחילו

Two interrogative pronouns in a row denote plural.

ઘ્રેન⁻ત્ર્રગ્યે **સે વારે વારે છે** ગો ^{જે}નુ What sports do you do ટ્રેન⁻ત્રન્ટ[®] **ગાગન-પાયન-**વર્ચો ખાખે**ગ** Where are you going? (lit. What places are you going to?) ચિં<u>ત્ર'</u>વર્દ્વ ગ્રું**યાયીયાયી સ**વ્લે વે[™]ન્ Which classes do you attend? विंन्रर्कें **गावश्वगावश्वग**्धेन् रेन् Which places are they coming from?

કે ચ[્]રે વાવદેવ ગ્રા**ય ઢેંન ગાર્ઢે ન** પેંગરે ગ How many classes are there in a day?

#### 6 <u>ສຸ</u>ຣາຫຼືອງ **EXERCISE**

Write down three questions using two interrogative pronouns, e.g. ग'रे'ग'रे', ग'दश्ग'ग' त्र etc, and use them to ask your partner. Note down his answers.





# हिन् रूर गेश गरे हेन नगेंश ग्रे खेना What do you need to do?



র্ম্নি-ক্রে-নান্ট্র্যা-বা

#### ㅋ득'휰ོๅ GRAMMAR

Unit two ((ག)

Need to/Have to

When द्रवें अ serves as a main verb, it is translated as need or want. In this case, the subject requires a आर्नेन' particle (2nd or 4th) case.

Pronoun +	यांनेंब Particle	Object	<b>ন্ব্</b> শ (খ্রি')	Auxiliary
۲:/ ۲:కే	ল	રહું.		র্মনা / শ্রনা
BJ:75: / BJ:75:8	ল	75a.		रेन्। / अरेन्।
`क्वॅन्नॅ\'न्नॅ	ব	ੜ.ਕ.		रेना/बारेना

 ८.भ.र. देवा स.स. हे से स्वार प्रायः देवा स्वार स्वार्थः स्वार स् 

I don't want thukpa. (দ'শ'ধ্ৰণ'দ'দ্ৰ্বাঁশ'দ্ৰ্বাঁশ'দ্ৰ্যাঁম'ন্ম is not polite enough to say.) Do you need anything? र्ने 'द्युन'य' क्रून्श' वर्षित्र'गश्चर य'विग'नगॅश' ग्रे' थें न'रेन्। Thondrup needs/wants a new car.

### ন্দ:গ্র্রিনা GRAMMAR Need to do/Have to do/Must

When combined with another verb, द्रभा अ' becomes a modal verb. The meaning changes and it is translated as need to, have to, and must.

Pronoun +	3 rd Case +	Verb +		Auxiliary
<u> </u>	শ্ব:/ঊশ্ব: বই্র:	<b>ក្<b>តា៍</b>শ:(ភ្ញិ[·])</b>	র্ল্য / র্ষন্য	
हिन्दर / हिन्दरहर	ন্দীকা/কা/জিকা	લું.	(ש) זייןיך	रेना / य'रेना
কিঁন:/কিঁন:স্কিঁ	ন্মীক্ষা/ক্ষা/জিক্ষা	র্মুন'		रेना/अर्रेना

ઽૹ੶૱ઽ[੶]ૹૣૢ૾ૼૼૼઽ[੶]ૡ૽૽૾૾ૻ૾૱ૼઌ૽ૼૼૹૻૻ૽૽ૼૢ૽ૺૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼ 

I must write homework. Do you need to finish this work? Yeshi has to buy a new pen.
### 9 🗧 ङिण'णश्र- राँग्राश' अनेग्रा HELP WITH VOCABULARY

In order to express strong obligation such as **must** or **have to**, use  $\neg$   $\widetilde{\eta}$  sr in the following constructions:

$$\left\{ \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{n} = \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{n}$$

ર દેશ સર, રુ. છે છે છે જે જે જે જે છે છે છે. I have to go to Delhi tomorrow. ગગ્ર બેશ શેશ દેશ સર, રુ. જ્વેર બહુર, રર્ગે શ શે છે જે તુ સે ગુ Tashi must wash the car.



Finish the sentences by saying what other people need/want by using দ্বর্ণাশ.

9	<del>۹</del> ٓק ⁻ ۳
१	า ^ะ สุ
3	至 ² 1
۲	ळॅश्र'र्श्चेव
۲	নর্ঝিন্'ব্রম্ম

# 11 শ্রুন'শৃদ্দি - EXERCISE

Write five things that you need or want in your life.





→ Write down sentences about what Tashi has to do and what he doesn't. Follow the example.

## ग्रावर क्वाना रूर्दे ४:०० दर्य सह दावर ला रखें

᠊᠋ᡎ᠍᠍ᢦ᠅᠗᠄ᠴᡭ᠄ᢎ᠄ᢅ᠋ᢅᢠ᠆᠋ᠴ᠋᠊᠋᠊ᠳ᠋᠋᠋ᢋ᠋᠋᠆ᠬ᠉᠂ᠬᠴ᠋ᢩᠬ᠄ᢆᠿᢂ᠋᠋᠆ᡪᢥ᠄ᢂᢄᢅ᠆᠋ᢩᡰᡆᠵᢁ᠈᠍ᠺᡱᢆ ᠆ᡏᠯᢩᢂᡃ᠋᠋ᡃᢧ᠂ᠮᡆᢅ᠆ᡝᡶᡪ



Nork in pairs. Ask your partner questions about Tashi's schedule.

> रेत्। न्याभीशामावदः झानवेः क्रुळेत्रानकुत्राधवेः विमानवेः अर्देत्। वाद्यीं न्योंश्वामेः देन्।

# الحَاجَ المَّامَ المَاحَ الحَاجَ المَاحَ المَّاحَ المَّاحَ المَّاحَ المَّاحَ المَّاحَ المَّاحَ المَاحَ المَاحَة عَلَيْهُ المَّاحَة عَلَيْهُ المَّاحَة عَلَيْهُ المَّاحَة عَلَيْهُ المَاحَة عَلَيْهُ المَاحَة عَلَيْهُ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْهُ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْنُ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَا مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْ مَا مَا مَا مَاحَة عَلَيْنُ مَا مَ



র্ম্নি-ক্রে-নান্ট্র্ম-না

## ବ**ട**'ଶ୍ୱିଁମ୍ | GRAMMAR

## Want to do/ Would like ਕਵੇੱਤ।

Unit two

(শ্

Look at the sentence construction of how to express want to do or would like in Tibetan.

Pronoun +	3 rd Case +	Verb +		Auxiliary
<u> </u>	শ / অঁশ	র্ন্মিশ্য'	حَجْمَ عَنْ	दर्ग / ^{झे:} दर्ग
\$7'75' / \$7'75'\$	শীমা / মা / অঁমা	ন্র্র		ळॅनरेन / ळॅनर्वरेन
بَعْ:-بَمَ / بَحَة:	শীমা / মা/ ঊমা	*95'		ळॅन्देन / ळॅन्सदेन

ઽૹૻૻૻૻૣૻૡૡૢઽૡૺૼૼૼૼઽૺૼૼૼૺૺૻ૽ૼૺૡઽૢૣ૾ૼૼૼૣ ૡ૽ૺૼઽૻઽઽૻૹઽૻૹ૾ૼૼૼૼૼઽૺઌૼ૾ૼૼૼૼઽૺ૽૽ૼૡઽૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૻ૽ૼૺૡઽૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૺૻ૽ઌૺ ૱ઽૼૡૢ૱ૡૹૢૡૻઌૡૢૼૼૼૼૼઙૺ૱ૡ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺૺૻ૾ૺૺૼૡૻૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૾૱ I would like to drink tea, please. / I want to drink tea. Do you want to sit down? / Would you like to sit down? Janchup doesn't want to travel.

14 ভ্রন্ডশেজী > EXERCISE শ Put the words in correct order. Example:	བ≌ོ་/ ଐད་/ ཀྱི་ / འདོད་ / སྲོག་གྲ་ / སོད་ / རིད། / ཆོས་ 
ર્થે'ગ્ર' /	ૡૻૼૼૼૣૢૢૣૣૢૢૣૢૢૣૣૣૣૢઌ૽ૣૣૣૣૢૢૢૢૢ૽ૺૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
र्वेन:/ दर्बे: /दर्ग / न: / दर/ दर्नेन:/ ग्रे:	གས།/ འགུང་/ ཀྱི་ / ཆང་/ ཐྱིད་/ ་རང་/ འདུག་ / ཆོས་ / འདོད་ 
લગ્વા લચ./ હોંન./ ર્શું ૨./ ગ્રું. / સેની / લક્ષ્ટ્રા જીથાં / લર્નેન.	Work in pairs. Use the sentences above to ask your partner.
ন্দী / মন / গ্রীন / এইন / ৫ন্দা / দাশ / গ্রী / ক্বাব / গ্রিনা	ড়৾৾ঢ়য়৾৾৾৾৾৾ঀ৾৾৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾ ঀ৾ঢ়৾৾ঢ়৾য়৾৾৾ঀ৾৾৾ড়৾৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾ য়৾ঢ়৾ঢ়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়
	वर्रे <u>नः ग्रे</u> ग्सॅन्देन्यम् सॅन्देन् ग्रेग्सॅन्योभः सॅग्य यहिंन्यर्नेन् ग्रेग्सेन्देन्

### ন্দ'র্শ্রনা GRAMMAR Feel like doing শ্বিন র্নিণী

The phrase क्षेज्र र्जे में is most commonly translated as **feel like** (**doing sth**) or **want to do**. Look at the sentence structure.

Pronoun +	3 rd case +	Object	Verb +		auxiliaries
<u> -:/ -:</u> రేశే	শ্ব:/ঊশ্ব:	বি'শেশ্বা'	ੜ	শ্বিদ:র্নানী'	न्दुन्ग्/ ^{द्ये} न्दन्ज्
हिन्रमः / हिन्रम्हर्के	দ্রীরা./আ./জিরা.	শ্বৰুগ	ন্দ্রন.	3737	ळॅन्रस्ता/ळॅन्यस्ता
ᡏᠮᡪ᠋᠄ᠨᡏᠮᡪ᠄ᢅ᠋᠊ᢟ	ন্মীর্ম:/ম./জুপ্র.	<u>ھج:</u>	द्युर:		ळॅन:रेना/ळॅन:य:रेना



Do you feel like eating momos? No, I feel like eating thukpa. Tsomo wants to become a politician.



Write sentences with the words provided.

```
      9) 도'/4য়Ĩ'/དགོམ།

      ٩) 도'챔Ĩ'/བཔོད།

      ٦) འོང་/རྒྱོང་/འོད།

      ٢) འོང་/སྱོང་/འོད།

      ٢) འོད་/འགྱད་/ རྒྱོང་)

      ٢) འོད་/འགྱད་/ རྒྱོང་)

      ٢) འོད་/འགྱད་/ རྒྱོང་)

      ٩)

      ٩)

      ٩)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)

      ٢)
```



Create sentences (aff, neg, question) with  $\[3.5ex]{3}$  त्रें ने and the verbs given.



#### 

## <u> শ</u>ন্ম স্থ্<del>য</del>

Saka Dawa is a very important month for Buddhists. Go to page 103 to find out more.

র্মুন ক্রন্যান্ট্র আন্য Unit two (5)

#### VOCABULARY ढेन<u>ामसमा</u>

নইন্শ	spring
୩୶ଷ'୩'଼ିକ୍ଷ୍ମ	weather
ૹૻ੶য়ઽૻૠૢૢૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૻઌૼ	mild
শ্দশ্য	snow
রু.খিলা	area
17:421	several, some
रु'वेंग	flood
<u> ২২.৬৩২.৮</u> ৯৯৷	nature
শষ্টিশ	sleep
वनःनविवा	like/as if
ई:451	plants and trees
ঝ৾ঝঝ'ডবা	sentient being
- হূম:স্ক্রিযামা	season
<u> </u>	happy

#### ^{'ਛੋਂ} ¶ Verbs

ন্তৃন্	melt
<u>N</u> J	wake up
R.	grow
এমী ক্রেঁযাম্যা	start
धेरप्देवा	come out

# য় রুর'র্ট্রন'ব্র্ইন'ন্। PHRASES

שאיאימחחן	it rains
קיזומיבימי אורן	face problems
नगुन अन्य हेना	hibernate
^ૹ ૽૽૱ૼૡઽૢ૾ૺૼૼૼ૱ૹૻૡૼૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૢૻૹૻૻૡૼૺૢૼૼ	plant seeds
<b>৴</b> শাবের্থের্থ-ক্রুগ	do hard work



รยิรฑ

<u>५३</u>,५.गदिगातसगानिशकेकं मूम् क्रेंसरें पेंन พิสาสาพรา ଽଽ୲ୢ୶୲ୠ୶୲୳୕୶୶୲୶ୄୄଢ଼ୖ୷୕୳୲୳ୖ୳୵୶୶ଽୡ୵ୄୖୢୄ୰ୖଐ୕ଽ୲ र्राय्तुरामयश्राम्हेर ๛งพาพราราสุธราวศ์สุท สิราจิรารรามารัฐานสมพาพิาณที่วัญสาพาฏิาณีรา พาสรารกุสารจะเวิรารเจิง <u>ୖ</u>୶୶୶୲୰୶ଽୡ୶୶୲୷ଽୢଌ୵୲୶ଽୖ୶ୢୄ୷ୖୖ୴୵୳୶୲ୖ୶୲୶ଽ୶୲୶୶୶୳୲ୢୖ୷୵ୖଽ୲୳ୠୄ୷ୖ୳୲ୖୖ୶୵ୄ୷ ู่มูลพานนิ้ารามิ สุมพาฏิพาลิกาศานิวิมพานสุทพาฏิกายุจาฏิ พี่ก็ ซีการที่นายพาฏการ์ทางมา **क्रुग**न्में शरी भेंन भरेना

#### SPRING

In spring, the weather is mild. Since the snow melts and it rains a lot, some places face problems with floods. However, it's as if the nature was waking up - plants and flowers start to grow and animals come out of hibernation. Nevertheless, at this time, as people can sow plants, they need to work hard a bit too.

> ㅋ독'혈ֿק' GRAMMAR Can 💐 🖓

4

In Tibetan, an is used to show one's ability. In English, it is translated as can.

3 rd Case +	Verb +		auxiliaries
শ্ব./ল্পশ্ব.	लेवु:	<b>র্ন</b> :গ্রু:	र्षेत्/ सेन्।
ন্দীশ্ব:/শ্ব:/ভীশ্ব:	देयु.		रेना/ व्यःसेना
শীশ্ব:/শ্ব:/জিশ্ব:	35		रेना/ व्यःसेना
	মা/দ্রীমা দ্রীমা/মা/দ্রীমা	3 ^{ra} Case + + মা/জিমা ন্যব্ব ন্যীমা/মা/জিমা ন্দ্রী	3 ^{ra} Case +     +       য়'/ພ৾য়'     য়৾য়'       য়'/ພ৾য়'     য়৾য়'       য়ৢয়'য়

<u>ફિંદ્ર સ્ટ</u>મીશ વાદશ સે બર્કે કુવ છે બેંદ્ર બશ พิสาราพิสุ รพากุรพาสิาร์สิาร์ สูราว์ พิร์า ळें नहव ग्रेशन न्द्र ग्रेंग वुन ग्रे भें न सन्त Can you build a snowman? Of course, I can build a snowman. Tsetan can't read yet.



Work in pairs. Take turns in asking questions using ব্রুন: First, use the second person with the verbs provided, then ask in the third person about people you know.



ন্দ'র্শ্বিণ GRAMMAR Connectives ক্রুর'ধুণ

6

The particles JTUTIAT are literally translated as "emphasizing and including particles". Their usage depends on the final syllable of the preceding word:

preceding syllable	particle
শৃ'নৃ'শ' or post-suffix	য়৸
ন'র'ম'ম'ম'	451
ন or no suffix	ਘ <u>ਨ</u> or ਕਨ।

In a sentence, they serve several purposes:

#### 1. And, as well as

वैसार्ने प्पन पत् या पा पर्से न प्य के स्वापन पत् It's delicious as well as good for the health.

र्वित्तः ज्ञुः आप्यत्ताः की का स्वा स्व a s well as a king.

지원회·배도·고환회·전도·관환[ I thought and (then) I did (it).

# 7 ଞ୍ରୁର୍ଦ୍ୟୁତ୍ର - EXERCISE

শ Fill in the blanks with the appropriate connectives ত্রন্থেন্দ্রেন্



- 4. भ्रयाभ्रयाने स्वर्गेयाया संग्द्रया ग्रान् क्षेत्र हे में हिंद दया के पर्या
- 6. ริเพราสร์เลาสาพราพุรา



## 2. But, although, nevertheless

ૡૻૺૼૼૼઽૻૼૡૢૢૢ૿ૣ૽૽ૻૣૻૠ૽ૼૡૻૺૼૡૼૻૢ૾૽ૢૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૻૺઌૻૺૻ૽ૡૻ૾ૡૼૢ૾ૣ૾૾ૻૡૼૢ૾ૼૼૼૼૡૢૻૼૡૺૼૻૢ૽ૡૻૺૻ૽ૡૼૺૻ૾ૢૻૡૻૺઌ૾ૺૡ૾૾ઌૺ ૡ૿ૡૢૻૡૻૻઌૼૡૻ૾ૡૼૺૼૢૻૼ૾ૻઌૻૢૻૢૢૢૼૻઌૼૢૻૢૢૢૢૼૼ૱ૻૢૻ૱ૡૺૣૺ(He) passed but with the low score.

## 3. Also, too

ᠵᡃᢍ᠋ᠵ᠄ᡈᢅᡪᡃ᠋ᠴᡃᡥᡈ᠋ ᠴ᠋᠋᠊ᡘᡃᡇᢩᢂ᠂᠋ᢧᠵ᠄ᡜᢩ᠄᠕᠄ᡬ᠊᠋᠋᠋

I am also Tibetan. Tashi is a Lama too.

ळिनामासन्।	VOCABULARY
@4 .4 %	VUCADULARI

ৰ্ন'ৰশ্য fror	n, among
मन्य केन् mo	stly, maybe
ङ्ग [ा] त्र∠। ше	adow
मिन्रु fill	
শশলী ear	h
हुन्ध dus	t
भ्रैंत ^{-न} ा clou	bu
শিঁন:ধ্যুন্য env	ironment
ম্বর্মশ্যন্তন্য all	
বুনঝাম্বার্তনা clea	n and clear
월드] app	ear
मळेंद्र sma	all lake/pond
ने'नग्र'बा the	refore
آَنَا اَنَّا joy	
শ্বন্দা full	

9 Underline all the USTUS particles in the following text

### 537'PI

ङ्घान्नरा के के ना नी आ मिरा आ मेनिर आ मानि रा हु त्या के राया राया नेक्दःरेना [.] भूमा देवग्रमा कंनकेवर्योपेंनजम्युण्कें श्रेण्यहेनयें हेननम ই'নশ'ৰা 

### **SUMMER**

Summer is the hottest part of the year and maybe the most beautiful too: the meadows are full of flowers, there is no dust on the ground, and the sky is without cloud. Since it's rather hot. Children can play outside or go for a swim in rivers or lakes. Therefore, the summer is full of joy.

11



### Word + Sl

In order to express "small + noun" add the ending -S' to a noun. In general, the word with S' changes its vowel for easier pronunciation. Sometimes, the meaning shifts.

-> গ্রি monkey -> small monkey stone -> small stone/pebble हेख throne -> small throne -> ସିମ୍ବା

#### <u>ສ</u>ຽງອາອີງ > EXERCISE 10

Practice the construction "small + noun" using the ending -S. Translate the words into English.

0	È.	-> Ê.G.	puppy
1	<b>N</b> .	->	*****
2	ন	->	*****
3	র্চ	->	*****
4		->	*****
5	۲.	->	****
6	ले.	->	

# ন্দ:গ্র্রিনা GRAMMAR

The particles ਕ੍ਰੇਨਾ ਡੇਨਾ ਐਨ serve as and in English. They are used between adj, nouns, verbs and clauses solely in literary Tibetan, especially in stanzas.

final syllable:	particles:
ন্ব্রামান্দ্রান্থা no suffix	â <i>ר</i> ין
শৃ'নৃ'ন' and post-suffix নৃ'	উদ্
۵۱.	শিন্য

- 1 สูเขา ราวาลสิวจาร์ วิรารที่ สุสารราชรา (He) came to India and met (with) his teacher.
- 2 พราะอาราทางระทางการ์าทุญรงางั่รา The snow is white and beautiful.
- 3 สิ้าระสักรณารุการเลิกเฉลารารส์สาธิกา (He) loves education and works hard.

12 डिन्गली > EXERCISE	<mark>13</mark> באיים אדין V	OCABULARY
୩ Use an appropriate particle લૈન્ડ ભૈન્ડ or જેન્ડ.	ই্ট্রন্না	fall
1. বর্ব: 6. ক্রুণ্	ন্ <u>য</u> ার্থা নির্মা	leaf
2. বশ্লীনশ 7. রূন	मि ⁻ र्नेग	color
3. भूम. 8. में 4. नहाराः	নমিন্দার্ম	cool
4. বশ্বাৰ্ম 9. দ্বৰ্শীৰ 5. শ্বুদ্ৰ 10. ক্ৰুন্ম	পর্না	mushroom
5.51	<u>न</u> ुरूः झेंबा	festival
Translate the sentences.	हेंत्र मेंग	harvest
1 विंग्रासुनाने श्वेत्राहे वित्राकेतार्ये वर्त्तन	1 1 1	celebration
2 न्युदायायायायायायाः हत् क्रां क्रां में प्रा	ר'אן	snow
3 ન્સાસ્ત રહેં સાંસુન્સ બેન સુન દે સુંસા શે ખેન	<u>14</u> ฮูล' <u>ฮ</u> ู้ร'รุรั	
4 નુરૂઝાય તે દેવા બેનર લેનર કે છે બરાવ ના તે		
5 ફ્રેંવ ૡૠ૾ૺૡૻ૾ૣૣૣૣૣૣૣૠ૾ઌ૽ૻ૽૽ૢૺ૱ૡ૽ૺઽૡૻૹૣઙૢઽ૾ૻ૱ૼૹૣ૾ૼૼૹ૽૿ૢૢૺૼૼૻ૾ૼઌ૽ૻૢ૽ૼઽૼ૽૿૽૾ઌ૾ૻૼઽ 6 ૹઽૹૻૡૢૢૹૻ૽૽૾ૢૺ૱૽ૺૼૺૼૼૼૼૼૹૻૻૻઌૣૹૢઽૹૻઌ૾ૺઽૻૹ૾ૺૹૹૻૻઙૼૼૡૼૡૻૹૺૡૼૼૼૼૹૼઌૻ૾ૺૼૼૼૻ૾૾ૺઌ૾ૺૼૼૼ	<u>রু.মি.মেমি</u> মা	swim
6 શ્રદ્ય મુશ્ર ગુરુ હત્ય વશુદ્ય ભુદ શ્રહ્ય કર્ય વાય ગુખ્ય	শ্রশি হীশ	prepare
1	ૡૠૼૡૹૢ	pick mushrooms
2.	র্ন:ক্রা	wind blows
3	র্শীনান্ত্রশার্কীনা সুরু	fly kites
	য়৾য়ৢ৾৾৲য়৾৾৾৴৾৾	celebrate
4	ङ्ग्रॅन ⁻ चॅन-धून।	collect harvest
5	পন্থন'র্থন'র্য়ন। 	ski
6	নাদঝার্মানের্বা	make snowmen



15 Highlight all the લેંદ બેંદ કેંદ in the following text.

### ঈ্গ্রিশা

### FALL

Since the leaves change their color in the fall, the landscape is full of colors and it's beautiful. The weather is cool, people can go mushroom-picking and children can fly kites because the wind blows. Usually, people put lots of effort into collecting the harvest. Therefore, when they finish working in the fields they celebrate. In particular, people and animals start preparing for winter.

# స్టేన : జేష ' गुहे న ' പা Unit two (5) ఇశ్వాని ' నిణి The Four Seasons



### ন্দ:র্শ্রনা GRAMMAR Go to do রিচাযানার্শ্বর্যা

16



The construction "**go to do**" is formed by using  $a^{t} \tilde{f}_{a}$ " particles. It shows the purpose of what the person is going to do (= the 4th case).

છિन 'स्तः ग'ने' છેन' 5ુ' બ્લ્રોં 'गे' ખેલા દ के 'કે ब' ગુન્દા म 'બ ग' च' 5 'બ્લ્રોં 'गे' ખેલા ન ગો 'બ્લ્ડુ વ 'બ ગા ' કે ન' ર્શે 'બે' ' કે ' રુ 'બ્લ્રોં 'ખ' ને ન' એ 'બ્લ્ડુ ગ What are you going to do?

We're going to eat lunch.

Gendun isn't going to play basketball.

In colloquial Tibetan, the construction with 끽ㅈ is used instead.

छिनःस्तः र्वेनःयः माःसेः छेनः मनः प्र्य्यों मीः भिक्ष नः र्वेमाः ग्रुः महिनः मनः प्र्य्यों मीः भिक्ष श्रेः इस्र सः विनः विनः प्यसः माः छेनः मनः प्र्य्यों मीः पनु म

What are you going to do in Tibet? I'm going to fly kites. People are going to work in the fields.

# 17 শ্রু্র'শ্রি <mark>> EXERCIS</mark>E

Write five sentences using the construction "go to do". Use the literary version with यार्नेन particles.

n) a) a) c) () () ()

### ا ( القَارَ ( العَارَ العَارَ العَارَ العَارَ العَامَ العَامَ عَامَ العَامَ 'العَامَ' ( العَامَ العَامَ عَلَي العَامَ العَامَ العَامَ عَلَي العَامَ عَلَي العَامَ عَلَي العَامَ عَلَي العَ

Use the prompted verbs to ask your partner about his plans.



## 19

### নন্যুর'শে

ન્શુતામંત્રે 'મેં' માંડે માં મોં તૃત્ત્વ શ્વાર, શાં છે માં ગ્રાપ્ત જે માં ગ્રાપ્ત જે માં ગ્રાપ્ત શ્વાપ્ત શ્વ ચેં ત્રાપ્ત વ્યવ્ય ગ્રાપ્ત તે પ્રાપ્ત જે પ્રાપ્ત જે માં ગ્રાપ્ત જે માં ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત બર્શે 'શુવ્ય પ્ય ત્રાપ્ત ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપત્ર ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપત્ર ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપત જે ગ્રાપત્ર ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત જે ગ્રાપ્ત ગ્રાપ્ત ગ્રાપ્ત ગ્રાપત જે ગ્રાપત ગ્

#### WINTER

Winter is the coldest time of the year. Since it snows in many places, people can go skiing, make snowmen, and do various winter sports. The Tibetans call winter "the time of snow". Usually, people don't have much work to do there, so they get bored.

# 20 ট্রি'মন'স্ট্রি'র্মেন্ড্রিশ্'বর্মা ARE YOU HAPPY?

Work in pairs. Ask	questions with the words
provided. ३८७४४४:ग्रुभिर्ग्से ५२५७१७४ २	१ २५७ म. मुन में २५७
र्विनः क्रुनि में प्रत्यायाया	भे'वर्ग विंग् क्षेंग में भे राष्ट्रण
ঈন্দা	Feelings
घट:ळट्य + यो.	tired
हेना + गे	bored
र्जी + गे.	sad
वेन क्षत भाषा + भी	frightened
ङ्ग्राह्य + यो.	surprised
र्नेन पर्वन्। + गी	shocked
<i>ૡ</i> ୖୖୢ୶୕ୄ୵ <del>୵</del> ୳ଞ୍ଚୖ୶ୄ୵୵୩ଵ୵୷୶୲	Health problems
র্মীন্ নির্মানা + মী	have a stomachache
यमें ना + में	have a headache
क्षेत्र'म'ळाँ + मीं'	have a sorethroat
क्रस'स'ता + मी'	have a cold
ळंगवसम् + गी	have temperature
यमें सुः वर्षे म में '	feel dizzy



### ন্দ'র্গ্রন_। GRAMMAR

Expressing feelings র্ক্টন্'ন্য

In order to express feelings and health in Tibetan, different copulas are used.

person	feeling	copula
<u> </u>	\$5-F	<b>৫</b> 5ুশ
BJ:75: / 8.	<del>يك</del> َرُيْكَ.	ৎ্র্যা (শ্)
<del>آم.</del> / <del>کر</del> .	<u>র্</u> জন:র্নু:	a्रूग / थॅन्ररेना

22 Listen to the song by Jolha-"The Four Seasons". Translate the lyrics.

#### สมารูหารติเ

નશુર્વાણ નહીન"ગાનકર્તાણ જ્રેંવાળ વય:નુચાનલી (2x)

নগুরাদাশনশানক্রানা নার্স্টানদশান্টনার্চ্রা স্ক্রীনার্শবশানি (2x)

ন্থাৰাশা নহীনাশা নহানাশা স্কিৰাশ। ৰমান্তমানাৰী (2x)

ન્દ્યુરુાવર્ષ્ઠે શ્વ.બન્સ્ કે શ્વ.ક્વ સૅંગ્લન્સ્ ફ્રહ્યે:વૃદાય:વર્દ્ધ શ્વી ફ્રહ્યે:વૃદાય:વર્દ્ધ થા ફ્રિંસ્ટ્રાય:વેંગ્લ:વનશ્વ વેંગ્લ:સાચ્ય:વાવ્યગ્વ ફ્રિંસ્ટ્રિસ્ટ્રેસ્ટ્રિ শ্যনাশ শহীশাশ শহসাশ ঈ্রাশ বৃষাণ্ডমানবি। (2x)

নগুৰাশেৰিমাৰা দৃষ্টদাশাৰিমাৰা দহামাণৰিমাৰা স্কুৰাশেৰিমাৰা দগুৰাশো দৃষ্টদাশা দহামাশো স্কুৰাশো ৰুমান্ত্ৰশালৰা (2x)

### 

#### র্বির্শ্রীর্শ্বিশ্বশ্ব

Go to page 102 to get to know more about Losar, the Tibetan New Year!



Section Two ষ্ণু:র্চ্জর:শৃ

> Word Formation ঊশাশীশ্রুন স্কৃদশা

- 1. The Five Prefixes ই্র'ণ্ট্্র্
- 2. The Ten Suffixes ইশ্বেদ্ব্য
- 3. The Two Post-Suffixes অন্ত্র্ব্

# Pronouns

1) Let's have a look at the Tibetan pronouns in two groups. The first group is less polite than the second one.

Ι	51	we	5:æ
you	টিনা /টিনা*	you	
he/she	শি[* /শি/*	they	<del>مَ</del> بَعْ ٢ الْمَ

Pronouns marked with * are usually used when addressing friends but not with someone you pay respect to (a lama, geshe, other highly respected people). However, on certain occasions, you can use  $3\pi$  ( $\mathfrak{F}$ ) when talking to a lama.

2) The following pronouns are more polite than those from the first group. To be on the safer side, keep using only these until you get more experienced at Tibetan.

However, it is sufficient to say  $\neg \uparrow$  /  $\neg \overset{\sim}{\approx}$  when talking about oneself/ourselves.

Basically, the word  $55^{\circ}$  is added to the pronouns from the first group to increase the level of politeness. It literally means "self".

(I)	הידהין	(we)	5.25. a
(you)	125/1251351	(you)	الكاح بحد يحقوا
(he/she)	الم الحديد / مر الحديد	(they men/women)	र्विन्दरः हैं / बेर्ग्दरः हैं।
(he OR she)	אָלָדין / אָלָדידָדין (H)	(they men OR women)	र्विनःर्क्तें or विनःस्तःर्क्ते (H)

َهَجَّا, أَهْجَتَجَاً and أَحَتَحَنَّقُا، أَهْجَتَحَنَّقُا are honorific versions of أَشَحَجَاً, عَنَّحَجَاً and أَنْحَجَنَّهُ' عَنَحَجَنَّةُ respectively. For example, when talking about His Holiness the Dalai Lama, using solely أَحَبَّ is appropriate.

In order to refer to people or things we use:

	this	مثا	these	محم: بعد
	that	ร์เ	those	ने ^{-क्र} ा
Examples:				
This man	श्चे वदी	That child	শ্ব:ন্য:না	
These flowers	बे र्हेगा पर्ने कें।	Those cars	<i>ਕੇੱ`</i> ਰ'' ਤੇ `ಹੈੱ।	

# TO BE ਘੈਕਾਂ/ ਨੇਨ੍ਹ

The auxiliary verb धेंन and its negation रेत are very similar to the English verb "to be". धेन and रेत also serve as "copulas" to express the nature or the main quality of people or things.

## Affirmative sentence



ઽ⁻સે-<u>સ</u>ુ*દ-ર્ચે-(*લેગ)-ખેત્રા વિંદ-સ્<del>ર</del>ાત-પ-(લેગ)**-દેના** 

I am a clever person. He is a doctor.

In the first person, it is also possible to use 3. The difference here is in emphasis. In the first sentence we emphasize "I" whereas in the second "Tibetan".

I am Tibetan. ܐ་མོད་མ་ིམན་ I am **Tibetan**. ܐ་མོད་མ་རིན་

## Negative sentence

(I) am not	म्रीम्	(we) are not	मेम्	- 'I
(you) are not	য়ৼ৾ঀ	(you) are not	য়৾৾ঽঀ	
(he/she it) is not	য়ৼ৾ঀ	(they) are not	ਕਾਤੇਤ੍ਹ	
-				

^{૬.}ૡૻૼૡૼૡૢૻૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૣૢૢૣૡૻૣૢૢૢૢૢૡૻ૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ ૡૻૺૼૡૼૻૹ૽ૼૹૣૻૹૻ**ૹૻ૽૨૾૾ૡ** They aren't monks.

# Question

In order to form a question, use the right copula followed by **start** which stands for a question mark.

There is, however, a small catch. In questions, it is more common to use ইন্সমা for the first persons. The reason is that we ask other people to tell us about ourselves; in this way we de-personalize ourselves which means that we put ourselves in a position of another person (here we don't use জ্বি).

Also, just as in affirmative and negative sentences, we use এব মেশা / বিসমা based on what we want to emphasize in the sentence. However, please remember that the first option - এব মেশা - is the most commonly used one.

Am'I?		Are we?	۲: ³⁶ : <b>२९:७०</b>
Are you?	<u>ট্টিন্:ম্ম<b>:ଜির:মঙ্গা</b> / <b>ইন্:মঙ্গা</b>*</u>	Are you?	฿ๅๅ <b>๎๏๊ๅ๚ํ๙ๅ๚๚ๅ / <del>२</del>ๅ๚๚</b> ๅ*
Is he/she/it?	٣. / ٣. / ٢. <b>٦ . ٦ . ٦ . ٦</b>	Are they?	اَلَّة: َ <b>حَتْ حَتْ اللَّ</b>
-			

ઽૻૹૢ૾ૢૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૢૼૼ <b>ૼૻૻૻૻૼ૱</b>	Am I crazy?
ર્લે ક્રેંન અ <b>રેન પશ</b>	Is she a student?
<u> </u>	*Are <b>you</b> Tibetan?
ੑੑਫ਼ <u>ੑ</u> ੑ <u></u> ਗ਼ੑਫ਼ੑੑੑੑੑ <u>ੑ</u> ਗ਼ੑੑੑੑੑ	Are <b>you</b> Tibetan?

In the first sentence, we emphasize "you" whereas in the second "Tibetan".

## Negative Question

In order to for a negative question, put the copula into its negative form and add rail.

Aren't I?		Aren't we?	٢:ਛੋੱ <b>:ब:२५:५४</b>
Aren't you?	୲ଌୖୢ <u>ୠ</u> ୕ଽଽଽୖ <b>ଈୠ୕୴୶୲୵୷ଽୖଽୠ୴୶୲</b>	Aren't you?	฿ๅ <b>๎</b> ӑ <b>҉ӓ҇҅҅҅ӓ</b> ҭҡҹן /ѧҡ <b>२_Ҁҡҹ</b> ן
Isn't he/she/	it? ٱَنَّ عَنَى الْمَانَ عَنَى الْمَانَ عَنَى الْمَانَ الْمَانَ عَنْ عَامَ الْمَانَ الْمَانَ الْمَانَ الْمَانَ	Aren't they?	مَّد: <del>تَ</del> قُن <b>طا جُرج معم</b> ا
ᠵ᠄ᢅ᠋᠋᠋ळॅॱॸॖगेॱक़ॖ <b>क़ॱ२ॸॱॸॺ</b> ।	Aren't we teachers?		

العمرية المعنية معنية معنية

฿ฺๅ_๎ҡฺ_ҡ๎฿๎[·]ฅ^{ฺณ}์[·]ก**ํ฿ฺสฺฯฺฺ๚** Aren't you drivers? ฿ฺๅ_ัҡฺ_๛๎฿๎[·]ฅ^{ฺณ}์[·]ก**ํ฿ฺๅฺ๚ฺ๚ฺ** Aren't you drivers?

# **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**

Possessive pronouns are a combination of a personal pronoun + 6th case particles.

<u> </u>	my	ઽૻૹ૾ૼૼૡ૾ૺૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡ૽ૺ	our/ours
हिनःजन्मी/ हिनःग्री	your/s	الأح: حد تَقْتُمُا / الأح: تَقْتُمُا	your/s
विंग्स्टांगे / विं विंग्स्टांगे / बेंदे। विंदांगे	his /her/hers/its	विंग्डेंदे / विंग्डेंदे विंग्टर-संदे / विंग्टर-संदे विंग्टर-रन्वे / विंग्टर-र्न्टवे	their/ theirs

٩٦۲This is my pen.٩٩This is my pen.٩٩٦٩٦That car is hers.٩٩٩٩٩٣٩٩٣٩٩٣٩٩٣٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩٩<

For more information on the 6th case particles, see page 89.

# "NOMINALIZATION" กรุฑาฐา (มารามานี้ารัามี)

The particles শ্বান্থা নিঁ নিঁ নাঁ serve to express someone's **nationality** or **place of origin**, **professions**. They also show "agents of actions" or members of a group.

Look at the examples given below. In brackets, you will find the most common particles used for each group.

Nationality and place of origin (ম'ম'র্মি') জ'র্ম'না American র্ব'র্ম্র্রিগ্রম্যা Westerner রূ'র্ম্বা Chinese woman	" <b>Agents of actions</b> " ( ^{র্ম} ') দ্রী'ন'র্শী a person who writes or a writer ন্ধ ^{্বন্দা} র্শী a person who is asleep র্ন্দি'র্শি a person who speaks or a speaker
Professions (শ'র্মি'ন'ম') অষ্ট্রি'ন্য worker ক্টিম'ন'র্মা writer/author দ'র্ম্মি'না driver শ্বুর'নেমম্যা nurse	Member of a group (न'न')कृत:नाBuddhistभे'.भु:नाChristianनेगे'.सुगारुगाGelukpa (a member/ proponent of the Geluk school)
Another way to express that someone is an agent of an action is by using the particle শশ্বা : প্রি'শশ্বা a person who writes or a writer সৃশ'শশ্বা a person who is asleep প্রি'শশ্বা a person who speaks or a speaker	≺ন∵ন্যন∵রেয়ন'ঊিন্'শ  freedom fighter -

Unlike other particles, নন্শ শ্রু are semi-dependent particles. Some of them depend on the preceding suffix but others don't.

Look at the verses from ঐশ্বশন্দ স্থূ্র ন্বন্দ। that the Tibetans learn by heart in order to remember this grammar rule:

૱૨ૻૼ [੶] ૡૻૻૼૼૼૼૻ [ૣ] ૻૻૺ <b>ૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻૻ</b>	ন'ন'ম' with or without naro (the "o" vowel)	I
<b>નન્ન'ૠૼ</b> ૡૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૢૼૻૼૡૢ૾ૺ૾ૻૼૼૼૼ૾ૻૻૡૼ	are the nominalizers (bDag po'i). After ग्', त्', त्',	l
ন'ঝ'ঝ'ন্দ'ন্দ্রনাঝন্নম্যা	ন', শ', শ', and ད་དག, the particle ন' is used.	l
<u>८.५.४.५.७</u>	After $\varsigma$ , $\varsigma$ , $\varsigma$ , $\varsigma$ , and words with odd number of syllables and	l
	without a suffix,	l
નનના સુખ્યત્ર સુત્ર ન ન ન સે શ	the particle བ་ is used.	l
ૹૡઽૡૻૡૢ૾ૺૼૼૼઽૻૹૻૣ૾ૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૼૼઽૻઌૡ૽૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹ૾	It is good to employ only $\tilde{\gamma}$ when there is an even number	l
	of syllables.	l
มีรามสนิานาจจราชณาธิสาจรุ	Word-endings শ' and ন' are similar (to the nominalizers শ', ন')	l
ૹૡ૽ૼ [੶] ઽૺૹૻૹૺૼૢૻૹૢૢૢૢૢઌૹૻૻઙૢઽૻૹૢૢ૱ૢ	ম' should be used whenever it's suitable	l

# !Important!

Even though some words are formed by adding the ગડ્યાં particles ગારાસાર્થે વેંગો to nouns, they do <b>not</b> serve as ગડ્યાં particles. In such cases, ગારાસાર્થે વેંગો simply function as a part of nouns.		From the Tibetan point of view, ন্দ্ৰ্শ্ also has a function of <b>ownership</b> . In that case, particles <b>ধ্ৰ্বা</b> and <b>ন্ব্ৰা</b> are used:	
		ন্ত্রমঙ্গ ক্রিজ্ঞা <b>ডব্রা</b>	a person who has a kind heart/ a
əə:ম্ম	bridge	- "	kind-hearted person
Jan XI	king	₹ [૱] ઽ૱ૼૺૢૼૼૼૼૻ <b>૱</b>	intelligent person (lit. "a person
ন্যার:না	happiness	941 3 1 <b>09</b>	
รุณฺตะสั	hero		who possesses wisdom")
1 1	hero	এই ন <b>প্র</b>	a person who has wealth/ a rich
ন্র্যামা	ant		person
গ্রুঅ'র্মা	queen	ଜ୍ୱ <b>:ସ୍ଟ୍ର</b> ମ	a person with a hat on

# **INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES**

In order to form a question in Tibetan, a sentence must contain an interrogative particle at the very end. These particles differ in colloquial and written Tibetan.

## 1. Colloquial language

In spoken Tibetan, particles <a>"</a>, <a>"</a> and <a>"</a> are used, based on the final letter of the preceding verb or copula.

final letter	particle	example	sentence	translation
51	দক্ষ্য	র্মনদেশ হ্রিদদেশ গ্রিদদেশ	ૢૢૢૢૢૢ૽ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ	Did your exam go well?
শ	শশ্য	<u>दर्ग</u> ःगश्च	เนราะนาสุราณาสิ่า เสรู สา <b>เสลง</b>	Are there people in the house?
other cases	নশ্ব	ધેફગ્ગમાં સેનુગ્ગમાં બેંનુગ્ગમાં	बॅॉब्रानुवःविगासेनः <b>मब्ब</b>	Is she a cook?

### **Tag questions**

In order to form a tag question in spoken Tibetan, use 5, 1, or 5, at the end of a question:

They haven't been to Tibet, **have they**? Pema is at home, **isn't he**? You are from America, **aren't you**?

### **Wh-questions**

Also, **no** interrogative particle is used when there is already an interrogative pronoun in the sentence:

Who	ধ্য	લ્વેં:શું:રેન્	Who is it?
Whose	শ্বব	ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૼ ૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ	Whose jacket is it?
<b>Wh</b> at	শান্	त्र'मीर'मा'रे' <i>प</i> र्म	What is over there?
<b>Wh</b> ich	শাশী	الح جريحة على المراجع المربعة المراجع ا	Which book do you like?
<b>Wh</b> en	শ'র্শা	ঢ়৾ঢ়৴ৼৼয়৻ঀৢয়৽ঀ৾৾য়য়৾য়ঀ	When did you arrive?
Why	শান্ট:ব্ৰুম্বব্ধা	ড়ঢ়৻৴ৼ৻য়৾৾য়৾য়য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়	Why aren't you at school?
Where	শান্দন্য / শান্দা	৻ঽ৾৾ৢ৾৾৴ৼ৾৾ৼ৾ঀ৾৾৾ড়৽য়৽য়য়য়৾য়৽য়৾৽য়ৼ৾৾৴৾য়৾৾ঀ৾৾৽ৼ৾৾ঀ	Where is your mother?
From <b>wh</b> ere	শারশ্বা	<u>শিঁ</u> শাৰ্শ্য নি	Where is he from?
How much	শার্ক্টিশ্	देवा पहुना ने पा ना केंन ने ना	How much is the T-shirt?
How	শ'ব্দ্বা + noun শ'ব্দ্বব্। + verb	য়ঀয়য়ঀ৾ঀয়৽য়৽৽ৼয়৾ঀয়৾য়৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾৾	How is the weather? How do you go to work?

## 2. Literary language

final letter	particle	example	translation
ন	শাম্যা	ૡ [ૢ] ૡૹૣૻૻૡ૽ૺૼ૱ૻૹૻૼ૾ૡૼૢૼ <b>ૡૻૻૻૡ</b>	Is the food delicious?
51	নমা	ষ্ট্রি- নেন্ ব্যাৎ হি' হু <b>ন নেম</b> া	Were you happy?
รา	নৃষ্ণ	ાફેન્:૨૨:૨૫:ક્રુ:ગુ:બેં <b>ન્:નગ</b>	Do you have a pen?
বা	বৃষ্ণ	ારે <b>ન</b> ાર્ત્ર છે. સે ખે <b>વ વય</b> ા	Are you Chinese?
না	নমা	ঀ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾য়৾ৠ৻য়৾৾ড়৾৽য়৾৾ঀয়৾৾৾য়৾৾য়৾য়৾৾য়৾	Did he win?
মা	মমা	฿ฦๅ๛๛๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚๚	Did you think so?
শ্ and শ্বন্ধন্য (no suffix)	বস্বা	.অ'রু'ন্রম্ <b>রেম/'নেমা</b> নান্ম'র্ন'ন্ মর্ছি <b>নেম/'নেমা</b>	Is this place low? Is that mountain high?
শ	ন্মা	ૡૻૺૼૼૼૼઽ [੶] ૽૽ૼૺ ^ૹ ૻૡૺૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ [ૢ] ૾૽ૼૣૼૼ <b>ૼૻૻૻ૾ૼૹ</b>	Does he turn the wheel?
حتا	অমা	ફિન્'ન્દ્ર-'રુ: રેંદ્ર'ન રુ: વાદેવા કેવા કેવા ગુવ્ય વ્યવ્ય વ	Do you go to sleep at 11pm?
শা	শ্বম্য	মি'শেম্যা'মর <b>শ্ব'শেশ্ব</b> ।	Have you eaten the food?
ন'রশ' (post-suffixes শ', ন')	সম্ব	ઽવેઃઢઃદે'ૡ૽ૺૼ [૾] ૿ૡ૾૾ [૱] ૾ૻ૱ૢૢૻૢૢૢૢૻઽ <b>ૢૢૢૢૻૢૢૢૢૻઽૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ</b>	Did he translate that textbook?

These particles can also be used in the middle of sentences. In that case, they are translated as **and/a comma (,)**:

છે**વ્ય** લે સે તે સેં સુગાય સે સમ રુવ તે નુ Dogs **and** cats are domestic animals.

ૡર્ગુદ્ર ગયું તે અ**વચ** હુ**વચ** ચે**વચ** સુંદર્પ્ય વચાયવિવ સચય તેવુ There are five elements: earth, water, fire, air, **and** space.

# PARTICLES रुँग'विग'रीग

Particles हेना लेना लेना केना serve two purposes – they stand for indefinite articles (**a**, **an**) and turn sentences into imperative. First, let's have a look at how to use them.

final letter of the preceding word	particle	example	translation
শ'ন্'ন' and ন্'রশ্ব (post-suffix)	উন্ম	শ্র্ <b>শ্বর্গ উন্</b> শ্রু <b>ন্ উন্</b>	<b>a</b> yak Sit!
ମ୍ବ୍ ଅଂନ୍ୟୁ and ଅସ୍ଟ୍ ଅଁମ୍ବ (no suffix)	ৰিশ	מה. הי <b>ופֿיז</b>	<b>a</b> house
201	ধীশ	য়য় <b>৾ঀয়</b> ড়য়৾৽য়৾৾ঢ়য়৾৾ <b>ঀয়</b>	<b>a</b> prince Stand up!

Note: In spoken language, only the particle डेन is used.

# 1. Indefinite Articles

The particles डेना लेना लेना लेना represent indefinite articles and perform the same function as in English. However, they can also be used in plural:

ઽ [੶] ૹૻૺ [੶] ૡૻૻૹૣਗ਼ૻૹ૾૾ <b>ਗ਼</b> ૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼ	We have <b>a</b> motorbike.
য়য়৾৾ঀ৾৾য়৾য়ৢয়৾য় <b>৾ঀ৾ঀ</b> ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾ঀ	Tashi is <b>a</b> doctor.
ઽ [੶] ૡૻૻૹૄૢ૿ૺ૽ਗ਼ૢૻૻઌઌૻ <b>૾ઌ૾૾૱</b> ૡ૽ૼૼૼ૾ૼ	I have <b>a</b> few pens.
૱ૢૡ [ૻ] ૡૻ૽ૼ૽ૼૢૢૺૼૡૻૻ૱ૢૢૡૻૻૹૣ૾ૹ <b>૾ઌ૾૾ૺ</b> ૼૼૼ <mark>૱</mark> ૡૼૢ૾ઌ	My neighbor has <b>many</b> children.

## 2. Imperative

Even though it is correct to use all the particles to form an imperative, only डेंग' and भैग are commonly used. They follow a verb at the end of a sentence and stand for an exclamation mark.

This type of imperative serves as a direct command and may come across as harsh, so use it with caution in order to avoid being impolite or rude

র্ব্র্র্র্র্র্র্র্র্র্	Listen!
ᡪᡪ᠋᠋᠋ᡪ᠊᠋ᢅᢍ᠂ᡩᢅ <b>᠋ᡪ᠊ᢒ᠊</b> ᠋᠇	Tell me!
^{৻৻} ম.सेन्र <b>ः भीग</b>	Come in!

## Other types of imperative

Tibetan language possesses several kinds of imperatives; their usage depends on how urgent the command is. They also depend on intonation.

i) Most polite <b>र्देगम्बन्</b> य	
ઽ [੶] ઼઼઼ [੶] ઼ૣૣૣૣૣૣૣૣૣૢૡૹૻૻ૾૾ઌ૽૿ઌૻૻ૽૾ૡ૽૿ઌૻૻ૾૽ૡ૽૿ૡૻ૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૾ૡૻ૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૽૿ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ૽ૡ૾૾ૡૻ	Please give me a job.
ii) Polite command 🛛 र्रेगुश्रा / ष्ग्	
ध्यत्तः स् <b>रेगश</b>	Come in (please).
<u>ટ્</u> વેન્સ્ટ્રેલ્યચ્ચ્ક્ટ્ર <b>ાજ્ય</b>	Don't sit here (please).
iii) Common <b>ጘ</b> ናኘ / <b>ጘ</b>	
য়ৢ৾ <i>৾</i> য়৻ড়৵৾য়ৣ৾ঀ৾৽৴৴৾	Wear (some) clothes. (!)
দি.কথা.ভ.২	Eat up. (!)

#### iv) Less polite - verb in its imperative form

xx7:25-55-11	Don't do this!
ळ <u>८: व</u> रशा	Have (drink) beer!

In order to make a negative imperative, place an in front of the verb in its present tense (spoken language):

अर्हे पिन्स <b>स्य न्ये</b> ने पीर्था पावना	Don't go to the beach, please.
र्वे <i>द</i> ःशः <b>सःस्नुः</b> षा	Don't look at him.
শ্বনি:হু:শৃ:ডনা: <b>ম'শন'</b> উনা	Don't say bad things!

Note: In written Tibetan, the verbs need to be in their **future tense**.

# TO HAVE/ TO BE/ THERE IS

The auxiliary verbs थॅन्।, वर्ग, थॅन्सेन्। and their negatives सेन्।, सेवर्ग, कोवर्ग, वाते थॅन्सरेन्। are used as verbs of possession and existence which always take the subject and place respectively in the 7th case (particles श्रान्सराज्ञ)

Affirmative

pronouns	auxiliary verbs	translation
٦:j and <b>٢:ळॅ</b> j	थॅन्। / बेन्।	I/we have
פֿק־דרן and פֿק־דריעדי	द्भुग or थॅंन्:रेन्।	You have
र्मे अ and केंद्र के	द्भुग or थॅन्:रेन्।	He, she has / they have

Negative

pronouns	auxiliary verbs	translation
٦:۱ and <b>٢:३)</b>	هم	I/we don't have
פאןידרן and פאןידריען	भै'व्हुग / थेंह्'मरेह्य	You don't have
मि में and मिन्द्र हो	^{क्रे.} प्ट्रम् / थॅन्:बन्देन्।	He, she doesn't have / they don't have



The possessive copulas 🖣 and its negative 🖣 are used with the first person (sg. and pl.) <br/>
and <br/>
sit and

When used as existential verbs, they are combined with the 7th case and are translated as to be or there is.

#### To have

ᠵᢁᡃ᠋᠋ᡢᠯ᠋᠔ᢆᢋ᠄ᡬᡝ᠋ᢅᡢ᠋᠋᠋ᠻᢌ᠋᠉ <b>᠄ᢅᠱᡪ</b>	I have two older brothers.
ઽ [.] ૡ઼ૻૡ૽૾ૺૻ <b>સેઽ</b> ૢ	I don't have a cat.

To be or there is

รดิ เพราะ เขา เพราะ เมิจา เขา สิง พ**พัรา**There are two rooms in my house.เข้า รัสา เขา จาเพจา เมิ เ**ครู จา**Yaks don't exist in Europe.

# TO HAVE, THERE IS/ARE අදු ဈ / ଐଁ ନ جُج

Copulas त्रज्ञ सॅन्देन कर्न त्र ने त्र are only used with the 2nd and 3rd persons. They are both translated as "to have" or "there is/are". They basically mean that "something/someone somewhere exists". The only difference between them is in their "mood":

र्वेन्'व्यःमाथ्यमा <b>ःदन्ध्य</b>	There are yaks in Tibet (Tibet has yaks)	=>	witness mood (personal experience – I saw them there)
ૡ૽ૼૼૼૢ [ૣ] ૹૻૻ૾૽ૼૼૡઌ૽ૻૡૻૻ <b>૽ૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૻ૾૾ૻૼ૾૾ૼૢ</b>	There are yaks in Tibet (Tibet has yaks)	=>	assertive mood (general knowledge – it is said, everyone knows, etc. but I have never been to Tibet, hence haven't seen them)

When the copulas are preceded by a qualifying adjective, we translate them as "to be":

માર્સ સુદા ફે મેં <b>લ્ડુગ</b>	Paris is beautiful.	=>	witness mood (personal experience)
૱૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૺ૱ૼૺૼૼૼ૱૱૱૱૱૱	Paris is beautiful.	=>	assertive mood (general knowledge)

Their negatives are श्रें (pronounced [min duk']) and ऑन् अर्नेन (pronounced [yo mare]). They are translated as "don't have, there isn't/aren't" or "isn't/aren't".

The copulas ৰহনা and আঁন্'ন্'ন্' require their subject in 7th case (i.e. আর্ন্রি' particles শ্বান্য'ন্ট্'). See Grammar section page 88 on how to employ this case.

# "Witness copula" ৭5ৄঀ / ৠ ৭5ৄঀ

Use ন্দ্ৰ্য or negative ঈ'ন্দ্ৰ্য to show personal experience (you have seen,etc.).

#### Affirmative

ষ্ট্রিন্'র্নন'/র্ক্ট'	र्ष.	B.	ন্দুশ	You have a dog (e.g. I've seen it, I know it personally).
ᡏᡏᡪ:/ðᡏ	Ч.	-J.	ন্দুন্	(S)he has / they have a son (e.g. I know/I've seen him).
न्धःची	ಷ.	שואד.	ন্দুমা	Over there is a restaurant (e.g. I'm their customer).

### Negative

To express negative, use the particle  $\hat{a}$  in front of the copula:

हिन् रहा / कें	ದ.	Ð.	क्षे प्दर्ज्	You (don't) have a dog (e.g. I've seen it, I know it
				personally).
<del>آمّ: \هُر</del> :	ದ.	<b>J</b> .	क्षे प्दर्ग	(S)he (doesn't have)has / they have a son (e.g. I know/
				I've seen him).
न्धःमी.	त्य.	a.brz.	र्बे .प्दर्य	There isn't a restaurant over there. (e.g. I'm their
				customer).

### Question

In spoken language, use সমা as a question mark. In literary Tibetan, স্বমা would be used instead.

ষ্ট্রিন্'ন্ন'/র্ক্ট'	त.	E.	ওর্নানাশ্বাশ/বামা	Do you have a dog?
র্শিন:/ক্রিঁ·	ন্য.	-Ţ.	৫5্না নাশ্ব / নাশা	Does s/he have a son?
न्न'मी'	<i>त</i> ा.	র'দেশ	৫5ুবা'বাশ্ব'/বাশ্বা	Is over there (any) restaurant?

# "Assertive copula" थॅंन्'रेन्। / थॅंन्'अरेन्।

Copulas बॅन्'रेन्' and the negative बॅन्'स'रेन्' imply assertion or affirmation. Use them for general statements, common knowledge, truth, when you hear about something, etc. Do NOT use the copulas for personal experience.

#### Affirmative

	৾৾৾ঀৢ৾ <i>৾</i> ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾ ঢ়৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾	ਕ. ਕ.	ନ୍ତି ମୁ	ᢍᢅᡪ᠄᠋ᡷᡪ᠋ ᢍᢅᡪ᠄ᡷᡪ᠋	You <b>have</b> a dog (e.g. so I've heard). (S)he <b>has</b> /they <b>have</b> a son (e.g. so I've heard, everyone knows, etc.).
	यमी.	ম.	ש.ועד.	बाननेन	Over there <b>is</b> a restaurant (e.g. general knowledge, everyone knows, etc.).
Nega	tive				
	<u>ট্টিন্'ৰ্য্য:/</u> ক্টি	ন্থ.	Ê.	فآج هنجرم	You <b>don't have</b> a dog (e.g. so I've heard).
	بع: ٢	ಷ.	<b>J</b> .	شَحْ عَامَ عَمَا	(S)he doesn't have a son (e.g. so I've heard, everyone
					knows, etc.).
	मनी.	ď.	র'বিশ	فآم بعاجر	<b>There isn't</b> a restaurant over there. (e.g. general knowledge, etc.).

### Question

In spoken language, use 🖏 as a question mark. In literary Tibetan, ५८ would be used instead.

ষ্ট্রিন্'ন্দ	:/ð:	લ.	Ê.	ર્લેન્:રેન્:ગશ./નુશ	<b>Do</b> you <b>have</b> a dog? (e.g. so I've heard).
) ۲۰:۲à		ন.	<b>J</b> .	ર્લેન-રેન-પશ્ચ-/નચા	Does (s)he have/do they have a son? (e.g. so I've heard,
					everyone knows, I don't personally know him).
न्ध-मी.		ন্য.	র'বেশ	ર્લેન્:રેન્:નશ્ચ:/નશ્ચ	Over there <b>is</b> a restaurant (e.g. general knowledge,
					everyone knows, etc.).

# Literary forms थॅंन्'य'रेन्' and थेंन्'य'अ'रेन्

In texts, you are likely to see the copulas in this form: ལོད་ག་རོད་ and ལོད་ག་རོད". Their meaning or usage stays the same as with the copulas ལོད་རོད་ or ལོད་མ་རོད་.

Examples:

ગુરુ ચાર્ચે સુવાર્ચે લેવા **થેંન્ વરેન**ુ વિંદ એલલા રાષ્ટ્રીને વેં **લેવા થેંન્ વરેનુ** There was a king in the pas. He had a unhappy mind.

# **ADJECTIVES**

Unlike in English, adjectives in the Tibetan language are placed after nouns.

I live in a small house. માયમાં હતાં હતાં વાયો વાર દેવાયો હતાં છે. આ ગામ આ

When using two or more nouns in a clause their order isn't important. Therefore, one can say

- or, ઽૻૡઽૻૻૡ**ૢઽૻૡૢઽૻૹ૾ૣૼૼૢૼૡૻૼ૾૽ૼૢ૾ૢઽૻૻૻ**૾ૡ૽ૺૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૻ૽ૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૻૼ૱

All the sentences translate as "I live in a small blue old house.".

## COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES

Forming comparative and superlative degrees in Tibetan isn't difficult. In most cases, adding  $\pi$  to an adjective is used to create the comparative and  $\tilde{\P}^{\pi}$  to create the superlative degree. For the rest of the rules, have a look at the tables.

1) If an adjective finishes in  $\overline{\gamma}$ , the comparative takes  $\overline{\gamma}$  [wa] or  $\overline{\gamma}$ .

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative	Translation
নৰনাই	จลร: <b>ค</b> ุ / รา	735. <b>AN</b>	kind - kinder - the kindest
रेष्ट्रस्	גרי <b>ק</b> ן / הין	रेन <b>:र्स्</b> श	tall - taller - the tallest
ଞ୍ଚିଟିଞ୍ଚିମ	ञ्जून: <b>न</b> ] / न।	<u>छून:<b>र्नेश</b></u>	few - fewer - the fewest

2) If an adjective finishes in ¶, the comparative takes ¬' [wa] or ¶.

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative	Translation
ध्धयाःदेशि	অন্য <b>ন্য / ন্য</b>	অন্যা <b>:বৃঙ্গা</b>	good - better - the best
<u> খ</u> ুণা ^ই ।	শ্রুনা <b>না / না</b>	শ্রুনা <b>:বিশা</b>	bad - worse - the worst
रुष्ट्रमा में।	মন্থ্য <b>ান / না</b>	মন্থনা <b>: কৃষা</b>	thick - thicker - the thickest

र्ष्ट्रार्ड्रेन 🔅 Grammar

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative	Translation
مديد. يول	बदर: <b>रा / ना</b>	बादन: <b>र्वेश</b>	sweet - sweeter - the sweetest
ন্বাগ্ব-মে	শ্ৰুম <b>্ম / শ</b>	নাগন: <b>ন্বিগ</b>	new - newer - the newest
नगनः देग	নশান <b>ন্য / ন্য</b>	<u> २७</u> २: <b>२ॅव्</b> श	white - whiter - the whitest

3) If an adjective finishes in  $\tau$ , the comparative takes  $\tau$  [wa] or  $\tau$ .

4) If a word finishes in क्रायायाया, the comparative takes म' [wa].

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative	Translation
न्ल'र्से	5ar <b>a</b> j	7	slow - slower - the slowest
ন্ঝন:র্র্রা	5 & G	JAR: 4	low - lower - the lowest
क्रीव्य देग	<u>کام: حالم</u>	٩ ٩ ٩	thin - thinner - the thinnest

5) If an adjective finishes in 5, 5, or 5, we only put 5 in comparative

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative	Translation
बहेरू:से	মই শ <b>শ</b>	মই ম <b>'ৰ্কমা</b>	beautiful - more beautiful - the most beautiful
<u>ৰ</u> ন'ৰ্ম্য	ล <b></b> ุจ <b>:น</b>	নন <b>:ব্রিমা</b>	deep - deeper - the deepest
ইন্ট্	ই: <b>ন্য</b>	<u>جَ</u> : <b>بَم</b> عا	warm - warmer - the warmest



These particles are used in the **second**, **fourth** and **seventh cases**. The আৰ্ন্বিয়া particles are: গ্ৰাম্ট্ৰা বা their usage depends on the final letter of the word that precedes them.

final letter	यर्'र्नेज्ञ particle	example	translation
51	<b>N</b>	બન્ સેંગ જ શાવર્શ	Go <b>to</b> the east.
ন and শ্রুর মিল্ব (no suffix)	শ ব্য	ૹૢ [ૢ] ૱ૻ <b>ૢૼ</b> ૼૡ૽ૼૼ૽ૼૼ૱ઽૡ૽ૼૼ૽ૼૼૼૢૡૻઌૻૡૼૼૢ	Potala palace is <b>in</b> Lhasa.
૬:૬:સ.સ.સ.લા	হা	વેંદ્ર ખેવા કુંદ્ર <b>દુ</b> બ્લોં	Go <b>to</b> study Tibetan.
শা ^{-ন} and ন্'রশ	হা	ন্থ্য <b>ট</b> . প্র	Lie <b>on</b> your back.
any final letter	শ্বা ব্বা	मिन:संदे:तृन: <b>वा</b> द्ये:दर्नुवा	There are people <b>in</b> the house.

Note:  $\P$  and  $\P$  are called "free particles" because they can be used with any final letter of the preceding word. Also, in spoken Tibetan, particles  $\P$  and  $\P$  are most commonly used.

Tibetans traditionally learn by heart the following verses from ঐশাশ পদ্ প্রিন্দেশন প্র প্রিন্দেশন থা help them to remember the grammar rule:

શ્વાસ્ટ રે.	શ. <del>.</del> . રુ. નુ. ન મુ.
^ૡ ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ <del>ૼ</del> ૼ ^ૹ ૻૻ [ૣ] ૻઽૢૼૼૼૼૼ [ૢ] ૼૡ૽૿ૡૼૻ૽ૢૢ૽ૼૻ૽	Are the seven "la don"
^{૱ૣ} ઽ૱૽ૻૡ૽ૼૢ૾ૺ [ૢ] ૾ઌૡ૽૽ૺૡ૱૱ૡ૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ	They are used with the second, fourth and seventh cases
<u> ने[:]हेन:ळे:म्रानश:क्वश:य:यइगा।</u>	And with ને છેનું and ਛેં ગ્નુનચ.
શ્ર.શ.ના.ન.૨૫.જાશ્વર.ધી	ম্ড' goes after শ', দ্তু follows words ending in শৃ', ন' and স'হ্ৰশ্
ᠵᡃ᠋ᠵ᠋᠊᠋ᡒ᠋᠊᠋᠋᠊ᡘᡃ᠋᠊ᡘᡃ᠋᠋᠃ᡘ᠋	र्नुः is used after ५:, ५;, ब्;, बः, रः and षः
<i>ড়ঢ়ৼয়ঀড়ড়৾ঀৼৼঀৼড়</i> ৢ	Words that end in $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{R}}$ and words without suffixtake $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{K}}$ and $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{F}}$

## SECOND CASE

The second case, also called ক্রুলন্ট্র'শৃষ্ট্রশ্ব'(শেশ্বাস্থ্যন্ত্র'শৃ), tells us the **place** in which an action happens. The particles are commonly translated as **in**, **at**, **to**, and **into**.

^{९९} म्वेरुग्र्विय <b>-तु</b> ग्द्वीं मी प्दन्म	Yeshi is going <b>to</b> the market.
ઽૻૹ૾ૼૹૻ૱ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૢૻૹ૽૿ૢ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૻૹૻ૾ૼ૱ૻૻૼ૱ૻૻૼ૱ૻ૽ૼ૱ૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼ૱ૻ૽ૼ૱ૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼ૱ૻ૽ૼ૱	I study thanka (painting) <b>in</b> Norbulingka.
ઽ૽ઽ૾ૺઽૺ૾ૡઌૣૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૡૢૡૢૡ	My father works <b>in</b> an office.

िर्धेन 🔅 Grammar

Special case of the second case is ትንንግ. Here, the subject and object which receives the action are the same, such as:

ૠૢૡૡ૽ૻૡૻ૽ૡૼૡૼૡૢૻૡૻૻ <b>ૢ</b> ૡ૽૿૱	Tenzin has become fatter.
য়ৣয়য়য়য়য়য়	Salary has been raised.
ગગ્રવ શે ભ નેંગ સુ સુ ર વશુ ર	The shawl's color turned grey.

## FOURTH CASE

The main aim of the fourth case (ক্রম'ন্ট্র'নজ্জিম') is to show a **purpose** or an **aim of an action**; that is why it is also called ন্র্বাঁশান্টনা beneficial or purposive case. It is used with an **indirect object** (IO) which benefits from the action, or with a **subject of verb of necessity** ন্র্বাঁশা.

Examples of IO which benefits from the action:

য় <u>৾</u> ঀ৾৸৾ঀ৾৾৾৾৾৸৾৾৾য়৾ঀ৾য়৾ঀ	Doctor gives medicine <b>to the patient</b> .
<i>୰</i> ୖ୩୮ ⁻ ୵୶୲୶ୖଈ୶୲୴୶୶ୡ୶୰୷୷୶ୡୢ୶୰	HH is giving a teaching <b>to his disciples.</b>
^ૡ ૻ૱ૡઌ૱૾ૺઌ૾ૢ૾૱ૡૢૻૡૢૻૻૡૢૻૼૡ૾ૺૼૡ૾૾ૼૡ૾૾ઌ૾૽ૼૡ૾ૻૡ૾૾ૡ૾૽ૡ૱ૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૡ૱ૡ	Mother is buying clothes for her children.

Examples of subject of verb of necessity:

<b>য়৾৽ঢ়৾৾ঀ</b> ৻য়	Flowers need water.
<b>দে</b> শ্বেশ্বামি দেশী স্থা	I don't want any food.
<b>বন্দন:</b> শ্ধব:ন্দ্র্যান্থা	Patients need medicine.

Instead of the आर्नेज particles, the fourth case is usually used with the following synonymous particles:

# केनजा अनजा नेंबजा छेनजा

They are usually translated as for the purpose of, for the sake of, in order to, etc. However, only  $\hat{\mathfrak{s}}_{7,5}$  is used in spoken language.

(In order) to become a Buddhist, one must take refuge (vows).

Butter is needed **to make (kneed) tsampa**.

Study hard **in order to pass** the exam.

I will become a Buddha for the sake of all sentient beings.

## SEVENTH CASE

Seventh (locative) case or नहेंद्र नादया is never used with verbs of action. It is used with:

1) verbs of existence	(e.g. ૡ૾ૻૼૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻ૽ૢૼૼૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૢૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻૢૼૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૢ
2) possession	(e.g. ૡેંન્ , લેંન્:રેન્ , લ્ડ્ગ)
3) dependence	(नहेवा)

Examples of the seventh case with **verbs of existence** (the **place** takes the 7th case):

र्वेन् वारे सर्वे ये सन्ये खेन् रेन्	There are high mountains <b>in Tibet</b> .
<u></u> <del>न</del> ॱॸॺॱॺॱ <b>ॸ</b> ॸॊ॔ॖॖॺॱय़ॱढ़ऺऀॺऻॱय़ॸॖॖॺऻॱॺऻॖॺ।	Is there a temple <b>in Dharamshala</b> ?

Examples of the seventh case with **verbs of possession** (the subject takes the 7th case):

<b>દ્રત્વા</b> ફિંગ્લેગ ⁻ બેંદ્ર	I have a dog.
<b>ਜ਼ਗ਼੶ਗ਼ੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑਸ਼੶ਜ਼</b> ੶ਸ਼੶ਜ਼੶ਗ਼੶੶	<b>Tashi</b> doesn't have a car.

Examples of verbs of dependence (the object takes the 7th case):

व्ह्रय:तु: <b>हु:व्य</b> नहेवा	Effects depend <b>on causes</b> .
ક્ષુ'શુ'₹અઅ' <b>લ'અ'</b> ઞફે <b>વ</b> 'ઽવેં[અ]	Children need to rely <b>on (their) parents</b> .

A special part of the seventh case is the so-called ঊ`শ্লনশ্।. Its main purpose is to show **when an action takes place**. In this case, any verb can go with ঊ`শ্লনশ।.

ઞ૱ઽૻૹૼૼ <b>૾ૼૹૢૼ૾ૼૹ૾ૼૼૼૼૢૻૼ૾ૻ૱ૢૢૢૢૼૢૼૻઌૻૡૻૻ</b> ૹૻૣ૾ૼૼૹૻૻૡૻૻૹૻૻૡૻૻૼૼૼૡૻૻૼૼૻ૾ૡૻ૽ૼૼૼૼૻૼૼૺૼૼૡૻ૽ૼૼૼૻૺઌૻ૽ૼૻૼૼ૾ૺ	Sangmo goes to school at 8 o'clock
<b>ਗ਼ੑੑੑਫ਼ਲ਼੶ਫ਼ੑ੶੶ਲ਼੶ੑ</b> ਲ਼ਫ਼ੑਗ਼੶ਲ਼ਁਫ਼੶੶	See you <b>on Monday</b> !
ઽ <b>૾ૢૢૢૺઃ૱ૡૣઽૻ:ઽૢૢૼ૱ૻૹૢ</b> ૼૺ૾૾ઌઽૻૻ૽૽૽ૢૺ૾ૺ૾ૻૼૢૼૺ	I get up <b>when the sun rises</b> .

# CONNECTIVE PARTICLES ଦ୍ୟିଦ୍ୟକ୍ଷ୍ମ (ସ୍ୱିଂସ୍ତିଂସିଂଘ୍ୱି)

Connective particles - এই শংশ্ৰা (lit. relation sound) are known as the **sixth case** (ক্লংস্ট্ৰ'হ্ৰণ'শ্) or **genitive**. The reason to call it "connective" is that in Tibetan, two nouns need to be connected with a particle that determines their relation, as in Tashi's mother (নমংশী শেষণামা).

The sixth case is usually translated as "**of**" or by the possessive "**'s**". It is used to form possessive pronouns, noun complements, adjectives and relative clauses.

The 6th case particles are බ්.ඞ්.ඕ.ඕයි.ක් and their usage depends on the final letter of the preceding word.

final letter	particle	example	translation
ন্য'ন:	শ	र्देट:[मट: <b>मै</b> ]'ठ:यम	things <b>of</b> the shop
ব্'ঝ'ম'ঝ'	र्म)		city <b>'s</b> streets
ন্'ন'শ	भी.	য়ৼয় [৻] য়ৣয়৾ <b>য়ৢ</b> ৾৻য়৾য়	Buddha <b>'s</b> religion
ন্ শ্বন্দ্র্র্যন্ (no suffix)	તે છે	ૢૢૢૢ <b>૽</b> ૡ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૣઌ૽ૼૡૻૻૣઌૼૡૻ ૱ૺૡૼ૾ૻૹ૾ૢ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻઌ૱ૢૼૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૢૻૡૼૺૻ <b>ૡ૿</b> ૡ૱ૻૻઌૡ૽ૺૺ	bird <b>'s</b> wing the plan <b>of</b> 2017

Note: In spoken Tibetan, the particles गै'ਗ਼ੈ'ਹੈ' are all pronounced as [गे].

More examples:

দ <b>রি</b> জারান্দ্রান্দ্রা	my mother
মন:ক্রুম:ব্বন: <b>নী</b> 'মন্	the picture that's in the camera
ૠૢૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ	Tenzin's wife
ઽૼૺ [૱] ૹૻૻ૾ૼૼૼઽૼૻ <b>૽૽ૢ</b> ૼઌૹૻૻ૽૽૱	library staff

Verses from অন্যায় বিশ্বস্থান পদ্দ শ্বিদ্বস্থা to remember the grammar rule:

ઐ <u>૾</u> ૠ૽ૢ૿ૺ૾ૺૺૺૺૺ૾૽ઌ૾ૺૺ૾ૡૺ૾ૻૡ૾ૺૻ૾૾	The five गै'ਸ਼ੁੰ'ਹੈ'ਕੇ' (and) ^ਘ ੇ
क्सान् हे: दुगाना प्रदेशा झान्मा।	Are the sixth case (or) "વ્લેવ"ક્યુ"
<u>ને સ્વય્યાય યથવ અને સંવૈ</u>	(The same five with the ending "ས"
क्सान्डे गश्यमा हेन झा हे॥	Are the third case or "క్రేష్
ૹ૾ૢૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡૢૼૼૡૻૡૻૻૡૻૻૡૻૻઌ૿	The method to apply them (is as follows: words ending in: ) ব্যম্যমেশ – স্ত্রী
<u> ٦ ऱ २ ऱ</u> िया ऱ ये।	ད་བ་མ་ – ཀྱི་ (and) ག་ང་ – གི་
ૡૡૡૹૡૡ૽ૡૡૡૡ	લ and no suffix – લે and લે

The particle  $\hat{\alpha}^{r}$  is used more commonly in literary language than in spoken language. Both  $\hat{\alpha}^{r}$  and  $\hat{\alpha}^{r}$  are used to suit the requirements of the metre.

ઽ <b>૾ઌ૿ૺ</b> ?ૡૢઽ૾ૡઽ૾ૣ૾ૼૹૻૻ૱ૢૢૼૹૹૻૻૹૼૣૣ	(6)
<u> ଶ</u> ୍ୱଦ୍ୟବ୍ୟ ଅଭିନ୍ୟ	(6)
ૹૹઽૢઽઽૹૢૹઽ૱ૡ૾ૻૼઽૼ૱ૢૢ	(6)
؆ڐڝ؞ۑڕڮ؉؞ۑڟٵ؞ۑ _؆ ؊؊	(6)

The particle  $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$  changes pronunciation of final syllables, for instance:

<b>द्वे</b> छ लाग	[ngee]
र्म्यादि : आ	['goo]
र्बा दे दे द	[mei]
र्भदे मात्रुगरू से	[me -e]
<i>સુ</i> 'ન્1ુ' તે ' <del>કે</del> ન' રાજ્ય	[thu khuu]

# AGENTIVE PARTICLES শ্রিন'শ্রীশ'শ্রীশ'শ্রীশ'শ্রীশ'শ্রীশ'শ

Agentive particles হ্টিন্শ্রা (lit. agent sound) are the **third case** (ক্রমন্ট্রিন্গ্র্যম্গ) particles known as **the agentive**. Their main function is the role of an agent, i.e. "the one that performs an action". It is used in order to distinguish the subject from objects, in other words "who does what to whom". It generally marks the subject of transitive verbs.

It is formed by adding s^r to the genitive. The rules follow the same pattern as in the case of the genitive case. It is sometimes translated as "**by**".

final letter	particle	example	translation
ন্য'ন্ন'	শীশ্বা	૱ૢૻૻૻૣૻૡૢ૾ૺઽૻ <b>૽૿ૣ૾ૺૼૼૼૼ૾ૻ</b> ૾ૻૻૣ૽ૼઌૼૻૺૼ૱ૻૻૻૻ૽ઌૻૢ૽ૼૼૻૼ	Chinese government destroys monasteries.
ব্'ঝ'ম'ঝ'	শ্রীক্ষা	য়ড়ড়৻য়৻য় <b>য়ৣয়</b> ৻ঀ৾৻য়৻	Predators eat meat.
ন্'ন'শ	গ্রীক্ষা	૾૾ૢૢૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૹ [ૢ] ૼૺૼૼ૱ૹ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱	Practice dharma by heart
ন্ম্যন্নইন্' (no suffix)	_শ্বা অন্ধা	ঝাদমাদা <b>মা</b> দগান স্ক্রীন বার্বন। আদমাদা <b>থিমা</b> দগান স্ক্রীন বার্বন।	Scholar gives advice.

Note: In spoken Tibetan, the particles गै'ग्रे'ग्रे' are all pronounced as [गै].

Verses from ঐন্যশন্দ্রপূর্ণ রূমন্য to remember the grammar rule:

ગે શું શું રે ચે સ્ટર્ગ	The five गै'ਹੈ'ਹੈ'ਕੇ' (and) ^ਘ ੇ
क्षान्द्रे दुगामाल्द्रेलाञ्चान्मा ।	Are the sixth case (or) "व्हेव्रङ्ग"
<u> ને '</u> સ્વયુગ અપ્ર અપ્ર વ્યુગ્ સ્થય છે. આ પ્ર અપ્ય વ્યુગ અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય અપ્ય	(The same five with the ending "ས་"
इस्यन्त्रे गशुस्य य हेन झ है।	Are the third case or "క్రేస్తో")
ૹૢ૽ૢૼ <i>ૼ</i> ૠૢૼૡૡૻૡૻૻૡૻૻૡૻ૽ૺ	The method to apply them (is as follows: words ending in: ) व्याप्राया – मुँ
<u>५.न.भ.म</u> ु.च.र.मु ।	ད་བ་མ་ – ఌౖै' (and) ག་ང་ – གི་
ૡૡઽૡૹૡૡ૽૱ૡ૽ૡ	લ and no suffix – વે and લે

Two agents exist: the **main agent**( ঠ্রিস্ঞুন্টেন্সন্দের্ণাশ) and the **secondary agent** ( ঠ্রিস্ঞুক্তনেসন্দের্ণাশ).

### The main agent

The main agent is most often a person or other animate being.

a) direct structure	
নশ্ৰ'শ্পিশ্ৰ <b>ন্থ্যস্থ</b> স্টে <b>ন</b> ইন ই	<b>Tashi</b> plays games. (lit. Games are played BY Tashi.)
ૹૻૺ [੶] ૼ૽૾ઽ <b>૾૾૾૿ૣ૾ૹ</b> ૻૻઌૢૻૻઌૢ૿૿૾ૼૹ	<b>Tsering</b> bought apples. (lit. Apples are bought BY Tsering.)

### b) indirect structure (object is in the second case)

ઽૹૻૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૢૢ	Tashi sends a letter to Pema. (lit. A letter is sent to Pema BY Tashi.)
à £	<b>Tsering</b> gave me money.(lit. The money was given to me BY Tsering.)

#### The secondary agent

The secondary agent shows the agent (things, manner or cause) responsible for action.

ૡૢૻૻૡૼૼ૱ૻઙૄૢૻૢ <i>ૻ</i> ਗ਼ૢૢ <b>ૹ</b> ૻઌ૽૿ૻ૽૽૽ૺ૽ૼ૱
ᠵᢩᢌᠠ᠊ᢩᡷᡃᠵ <b>ᢆ᠊</b> ᢌᡃ᠄ᠳᠵᡃ᠋ᠬᡷᠮ
ุสราธิ์พา <b>ฏิพ</b> าราฏิราจิาจลิโ

Lhamo wrote the letter with a **pen**. I cut the wood with an **ax**. **Buddhism** makes me happy.

# PRESENT TENSE 5ª5'8'5'

In spoken language, present simple and sometimes present continuous can be expressed by the same construction which is easily formed by following this pattern:

For the first person (sg., pl.):

Verb + particle (୩ି:ଅି:ଅି:) + ଝଁମ୍ବା

ઽૹ੶ਜ਼ੑੑਫ਼ૡ੶ਲ਼ਫ਼ੑਜ਼ੑ੶ਖ਼੶ਖ਼੶ਖ਼੶ਫ਼ <b>੶ਜ਼੶੶ਲ਼੶</b>	I play basketball on the weekend.
ᠵᢩᢂ᠋ᡃᡅ᠋᠂ᠬᡆ᠋ <b>᠂ᠴ᠍᠋ᡱᡝ᠋ᡅᢆᢛ᠋᠗᠆</b> ᡁ	I don't cook.
ᠵ᠋᠉ᡃᡗ᠍ᢖ᠆ᡔᡕ᠊ᠬ <b>᠈ᢅᡘ᠇᠈ᢆᢧ᠙ᡘᢅ᠆᠋ᡷ᠆᠋ᡝ᠉</b>	Do I teach you?

For the second and third persons:

Verb + particle (ปี:ฮิ:ฮิ:) + ฯรูป / พัร:ริรุ

They are going to Delhi.

વિંદ ગૈય વેંદ્ર દ**્વ્યુદ ગૈયેં દ્ર અરેદ્ર**ા He doesn't drink Tibetan tea.

ৼৢ^{ৼ৾য়৾৽ড়য়}য়ঀৢয়[৽]য়৾**৽ড়ৢৢৢৢৢৢৼ৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾ৼৢ৾ৼ৾৾৾ঀৢৼয়য়**ৢ Does Lhamo eat thukpa?

For the difference between ਕਨ੍ਹਗ and ਘੱਤ ਨੇਤੀ refer to page 82.

# Colors केंव अर्देग

~	
नगान: दें।	white
ৰশ'ৰ্শ্য	black
नुस्र-से	red
<u>ৰ্মন:শ্</u>	yellow
র্জন:থ্রি	green
र्श्व-श्	blue
হ্ৰ স্থিন	brown
કેન્:સુ	pink
જ્.લી.જા	orange
,खु:सेवा	purple
ই্ই বিশ	dark blue
প্রুন:বৃশ	dark green
<b>ન્ય</b> ત્ર:સ્રુ	light red
	light orange

# **Clothes and accessories**

শ্বুমা shoes র্ম্বি-রিন্য র্বনা ন্দ্রনা লু'র্ম্য র্ণীশ্ব:মৃন্যা pants ক্লী'নগ্ৰীম্যা scarf র্শিশ/ শাহনা shawl શાનના/આઅવે સેંગ શના इलालेवा/ देंगालह्य vest অগ্র-পূর্বম্য socks জ্ব-জুন্ हेत jeans শ্বুনম'শ্রিমা/অব্যানমা শন:শন্বা apron শ্লু:স্মাক্ষা belt থ্রুম:র্ম্রুনা র্মন্য পিন্যা हे दर्गे गा से गा लेला

jacket/coat t-shirt hat/cap sweater gloves handkerchief

shoelace glasses sunglasses



# Adjectives

অন্যর্মা/ স্থ্রনাতনা मेंन्द्रां / मेंन्द्र के दर्भा कुनःकुना / केवर्गा यदार्गे / हुदाहुदा म्रन्तम् / मेनम् न्ययः से / यर्षे र में র্জন্য / শ্রমর্মা মন্থনার্মা / শ্বন:শ্বনা শ্রুনামানা/ স্পর্মার্যা यनमार्थे / अनमार्थे। मिंगें / नुसर्रासें। द्युगार्थे। / नजुषार्थे।/र्भुर्थे। श्वेनः हेः र्थे। / अर्ने गण्न्ता শাৰ্লির শার্লিরা/ ক্রার দেশি শার্থা গ্রমান্য হিন্যা শ্বার্থা / খ্রি:র্যা र्बेनर्खेन / सर्ग्रेगसर्भ

good / bad cheap / expensive small / big many, much /a little short/tall (long) low/ high hot/cold thick/thin fat/thin Sweet/sour bitter/sweet rich/poor beautiful/ugly young/ old(animate) new/old (inanimate) early/late slow/fast



Family	বদ'ষী
--------	-------

हे.ज्येजा	relatives
শ'মা	parents
জে.আ	mother
জন্ম /মন্মমা	father
श्रुव अकेना	siblings
ন্ত: শ্বুকা	brother
৸ৡ৾৾৾৾ৼ৾ঀ৾	younger brother
শ্বন্টবৃ:শ্	older brother
र्श्वनः से	sister
শান্তন:র্মা	younger sister
गठेव:र्देो	older sister

<u>શ</u> .શ.સ.ચ
हे. रो
र्छ.स्
ळॅ सें।
কর্নি
લા.સી
ष्यःते।
พ.ศะ.
w.B
ञ्चुन सकेना
ळ रें।

grandparents
grandmother
grandfather
granddaughter
grandson
maternal aunt
paternal aunt
maternal uncle
paternal uncle
cousin
niece

<b>ਛ</b> ੱਸੇ	nephew
নৰন.জ্	spouse
भुें : श्चना	wife
ইি:শ	husband
র্ন্ট্র ম'র্মা	mother-in-law
র্ন্ট্র আই	father-in-law
ষনা.না	son-in-law
মর্ব:মা	daughter-in-law
क्वेन में	brother-in-law
श्रुन देग <u>्</u>	sister-in-law



210	610
<b>১০</b> নক্ত্র্র্যা	১৫ বক্তু হৃ স্থ হ
৫০ বন্য নত্ত্ব	(૯૧ ન્ગુ'નજુ'ને
100	75
200	<u> </u> রীমান্দ্রী
300	র্থপ্র-এন্ট্রী
~00	নণি নক্র্য
५००	র.এমি
600	হন.দহী
2100	ন5্ব:নক্স
600	নক্র্র-নেক্র্য
600	ন্ন্যু:সক্র্যু
1000	ষ্ট্রিন:নাউনা
10000	ন্নি'শৃন্টশ
100000	<u> ৭</u> ন্যুম'শ্বন্থিশ
1000000	শ'্দ'শ্বন্ধিশ
100000000	<u> </u>

५	
6	
2	
5	
ľ	

	-		
૧૦ કે.લી	११ हे.सु.इ.महेम	<b>૧</b> ૧ કે.બુ.૨.૫કેશ્વ	•••
૩૦ શુધ્રા.છુ	২০ শ্রুম'ড্র'র্ম'দাইদা	<u> </u>	•••
৬০ নন্ধি:নড়া	≈१ নৰি'ন্তু'ৰি'শৃষ্টশ	≈ ୫ କରି କଞ୍ଚ ଜି କାହିଷା	
<b>৻</b> ৹ শ্র:নত্ত্ব	<b>৩</b> প্র'নন্ত্র'দ'শ্বতিশ	<b>ধ্</b> র প্রু:নন্ত্র:ন:বাট্টিমা	•••
৫০ হ্রন্ম:স্ত্রা	৫१ ব্রুদা:স্তু:ন:শ্বতিশ	૯૧ ર્ગુગ રુ રે ગઠિશ્ય	
² '০ ন <u>5</u> ,বৃ:ড্রা	219 ગર્ડુ રહેર્ને વાર્ચમ	²¹ ૧ નનુવ જ તેવ ગાઉ શા	•••
১০ নক্ত্র্যান্ড	<b>১</b> ৫ নক্তুণ্ হৃ:মৃ:শৃউন্দ	<৭ নক্ত্ৰ-জ্ৰ-মৃষ্ঠিম্ <u>য</u>	•••
৫০ দ্বাসহা	৫০ বন্যু নন্তু ন্র্যান্টনা	૯૧ ન્યુ ન્યુ ગહે મેં ગહે શા	•••

11 ११ নন্তু:শৃত্টিশা	eleven
12 १৭ নত্ত:শৃষ্ট্রশ্ব	twelve
13 13 নত্ত নাধ্যমা	thirteen
14 🖋 নত্ত নন্ধা	fourteen
15 গণ নই জ্বা	fifteen
16 ୬৫ বস্তু:রুশ	sixteen
17 <i>গ²¹ ন</i> ত্ত:নন্ত্ৰা	seventeen
18 🕫 বই বক্তুণ	eighteen
19 ୬୯ বস্ত বিশ্বা	nineteen
20 ૧૦ કેં.લા	twenty

# Number अद्र यद्र
Culture Corner रैग'गलुरू'गै'केॅंबर्षा बिद्धा बिद्धा बिद्धा

## Tibet

ને પ્રત્વિત મેંનુ બાગવાને કે સાથર પ્રત્ય કે સુધાર છે. તે કે સુધાર પ્રત્ય કે સુધાર પ્રત્ય કે સુધાર છે. તે સુધાર છે. સુધાર છે. તે સુધાર છે સુધાર છે. તે સુધાર છે સુધાર છે. તે સુધાર છે સુધાર છે. તે સુધાર છે તે સુધાર છે. તે સુધા છે. તે સુધાર છે. તે સ Tibet is also known as the "Roof of the World" because of the highest mountain range in the world, the Himalayas. Its neighboring countries to the south are India, Nepal, Bhutan and Myanmar (Burma), Afghanistan to the west, Mongolia to the north and China to the east. The surface of Tibet is 14 million square kilometers. It consists of three regions: U-tsang, Amdo (mDo sMad), and Kham (mDo sTod). U-tsang is very dry and desert-like, but it has beautiful snow mountains and lakes, whereas Amdo can boast with green pastures and magnificent lakes. Kham, on the other hand, is proud of thick forests and vast meadows full of colorful flowers. It is surrounded by majestic snow mountains and there are lots of beautiful lakes which look like a mandala decorated with turquoise.

There are several mountain ranges in Tibet; however, the biggest one is the Himalayas. Also, there are many mountains whose snow has not melted for centuries – for example Mt. Everest or Mt. Kailash. Mount Kailash is considered a sacred mountain which many people come to circumambulate. It is said that in Tibet, "the mountains stand as stupas on the Tibetan plateau".

All of the major rivers that give fresh water to South-East Asia spring in Tibet - such as Brahmaputra, the Yellow River, and Mekong. Their water is very pure. It is said that they flow like nectar from heaven to neighboring countries which benefit from them. Also, Tibet has over one thousand lakes, some of which are salt lakes. The most famous ones are Lake Namtso or Tso Ngonpo. Some are considered sacred and can foretell the future, such as Lhamo Latso in South East of Lhasa. In those that are not sacred, people swim in during the summertime.

Tibet has rich mineral deposits. Its most precious gems are onyx, turquoise, and coral which people traditionally use as jewelry. There are gold, silver and copper mines in Tibet, too.

# ຊັງ<mark>'</mark>ສີ່ງ



# Tibetan People

Just like Indians and Chinese, the Tibetans have been living on their own land since ancient times. Tibetan people believe that they evolved from monkeys. Before Buddhism spread in Tibet, people used to be harsh. However, ever since they accepted Buddhism, their minds have got tamed and they have become kind compassionate people with good manners. Generally, we divide the Tibetans into three groups according to the province they live in; they are known as U-tsang, "The Province of Dharma", mDo sTod, "The Province of Men", and mDo sMad, "The Province of Horses". People in U-tsang are devoted people with big faith; people of mDo sTod are honest with other good qualities. The people from mDo sMad are intelligent and hardworking. And since they are neighbors with Mongolia, they have good-quality horses.



# Tashi Delek

The phrase বহা:প্রিগনেই অব্যা is commonly used as a greeting when people meet each other. In English, it stands for "hi" or "hello". It is especially used during the New Year and various festivals when people meet and is considered auspicious. In the phrase বহা:প্রিগনেই অব্যা, বহা: প্রগ stands for wishes of long life and increase of merit. With the phrase বহা আব্যা, you wish other people to have healthy body and spirit, as well as good life.



# ฉีร'ฏิ'ฐล'<mark>น</mark>

# Tsampa

Tsampa is flour made from grain that has been washed, dried under the sun, roasted and ground. There are various kinds of tsampa such as barley tsampa, wheat tsampa and bean tsampa. However, the main one is the barley tsampa. It is very easy to use and is considered a special Tibetan food which the Tibetans eat on daily basis. There are many kinds of dishes made from tsampa, for instance sPags (tsampa dough made from tsampa,



milk, butter, sugar and tea), mar zan (tsampa mixed with ghee, sugar and cheese), zan chang (tsampa in beer to be eaten or drunk), sKyo ma (porridge), rCam nyog (thicker porridge), rCam thuk (soup made from tsampa soup and phye mar (tsampa mixed with butter used for offerings). The most common and popular one is sPags which the Tibetans eat alone or with vegetables, meat, yogurt and sometimes also with a soup. However, you can prepare tsampa according to your taste and available ingredients. Tsampa can be eaten on its own or just with water, too. Therefore, all the Tibetans love tsampa regardless their social status.



# ਕੱਂ ਨਾਂ ਗੁੇ ' ਗੁ ਆ ਨ ਨ ।

૨૾ૺૹ[ૻ]ઌૹૻૢૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡૺૼૹૺૻૡૻૺૼૻૼૼૹૻૹૢૻૹૣઌૹૻઌ૽૾ૡ૽ૼ૱ૼ૱ૡૻ૽ૼૡ૾ૺૡૢૡૻૹ૽૿ าฑ์การาสสัสบ สุลามุควิรัสาญวักามการมารับกุญาวรักาม พิเกา ह्या क्रेंटन क्रेंटन क्या नवाक्षे में नके रेगका के क्ये के खान हुन के के का के का के का के का के का के का के क ૡૢૻૡૢઽઽઽ૱ઽૡਗ਼ૻઌ૽ૼૢ૾ૺૼ૱ઌ૽૽ૢ૾૱૱ૹૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡ૱ૹૢૻૢૢૢૢૼૢૼૻઌ૽૿ૡૺૹ૾ૣ૱ઌ૱ઌૻઌૺઌૡ૽૱ઽૺૢૼૹૣ૱ ૹૢ૽ૢૺૡૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻૼઽૼ૱ઌ૽૾ૺ૱ૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૹૻૣ૾ૼૼૼૼૢઽઌૻૹૹ૾૽ૼૼૼૹૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૻઌ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૺૼઌૻૹૻૹૺૡ૽૾ૢઌૻ૾ૢૹૻઌૡ૽ૻઌૻ૽ૡૻ૽ઌૻૹ૽૾ૡ૽૽ઌ૽ૻ૱ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ૱૱ૡ૽ૻ૱૱ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ૱૱ૡ૽ૻ૱૱ૡ૽ૻ૱૱ૡ गशुमानाइना हुनगुन्न मक्रेंता। भेन नो क्रमा केश ग्रे भग हुर्वे न तुन्न प्यदिया ાવર્નેવાગંદેશપદ્ધવું લેવાગવર્ડ્ડ ત્યાં ક્ષેર્જેશનો પ્રાપ્ત છે. આ સાથે અ<u>શ્વ</u>રબ્યુગ્વઅાવર્?ગ્?એ૨?રેઅંગક્તુર્વુ?ગ્રુગ્વેર્સ્યુટ્ર્સ્ટ્રેઅટ્યુટ્ર્સ્ટ્રેસ્ટ્યુટ્ર્સ્ટ્રેસ્ટ્ર્સ્ટ્ર્સ્ટ્ર્સ્ટ્ર્સ્ટ્ નક્ષૂત્રવ્ય સુંગયન્ડ્ય સુંચેનન્ડ્ન સંવેન્ડ સુયાયન્સ સ્ટેંત્ર વાયન્સ્ય સાંગ્ર

# Tib<mark>etan Nation</mark>al Flag

Like any other country, Tibet also has its national flag. In the seventh century, during the reign of Sontsen Gampo, a lot of military banners were made. Based on the model of other countries, the 13th Dalai Lama Thupten Gyatso, had the Tibet's national flag, as we know it today, designed. It shows Tibet's territory, its way of life and traditions. In particular, it shows the Tibetan government's policy.

The explanation of the Tibetan's flag is as follows: In the centre stands a magnificent snow-clad mountain, which represents the great nation of Tibet, widely known as the Land Surrounded by Snow Mountains.

The Six red bands spread across the dark blue sky represent the original ancestors of the Tibetan people: the six tribes called Se, Mu, Dong, Tong, Dru, and Ra which in turn gave rise to the (twelve) descendants. The combination of six red bands (for the tribes) and six dark blue bands (for the sky) represents the unceasing enactment of the virtuous deeds of protection of the spiritual teachings and secular life by the black and red guardian protector deities with which Tibet has been connected since times immemorial.

At the top of the snowy mountain, the sun with its rays shinning brilliantly in all directions represents the equal enjoyment of freedom, spiritual and material happiness and prosperity by all beings in the land of Tibet.

On the slopes of the mountain a pair of snow lions stand proudly, blazing with the manes of fearlessness, which represent the country's victorious accomplishment of a unified spiritual and secular life.

The beautiful and radiant three-colored jewel held aloft represents the ever-present reverence respectfully held by the Tibetan people towards the three supreme gems, the objects of refuge: Buddha, Dharma and Sangha.

The two colored swirling jewel held between the two lions represents the people's guarding and cherishing of the self discipline of correct ethical behavior, principally represented by the practices of the ten exalted virtues and the 16 humane modes of conduct.

Lastly, the adornment with a yellow border symbolizes that the teachings of the Buddha, which are like pure, refined gold and unbounded in space and time, are flourishing and spreading.



# ਖ਼ੑੑੑਸ਼ੑ੶ਸ਼ੑੑ<u>ਜ਼ੑ੶</u>ਸ਼

# Tibetan Royal Year

The Tibetan Royal is counted from the enthronement of the first Tibetan king gNya' thri bCan po. There are a few different years of the enthronement, though. However, the most popular is 127 BC. Therefore, the way we count the Tibetan Royal year is by adding 127 years to the Western calendar. For example, the Western year of 2017 would be 2144 in Tibetan's calendar (2017+127=2144).

Every year is dominated by one of the Eastern zodiac signs (dragon, snake, monkey etc.) as well as one of the five elements (wood, fire, earth, iron, and water). For instance, the year of 2017 is, in the Tibetan calendar, the year of 2144, Fire Bird.





# ਫ਼ੑ੶ਫ਼੶ਫ਼੶ਲ਼੶ੑ੶

# The Potala Palace

The Potala Palace is famous all around the world and it came from intelligent minds of Tibetan people. The word "Potala" comes from Sanskrit and means "the mountain which holds the boat" (rib bo gru 'dzin) in Tibetan which stands for "the pure land of Avalokiteshvara".

The palace stands on a hill called Red Mountain (dMar po ri) which is situated in the capital city of Tibet – Lhasa. In 641, the 33rd king of Tibet, Sontsen Gampo, built a white palace on Red Mountain. Later, his Nepalese queen called bal gZa' khri bCun made the palace bigger and built 999 rooms. On the top of them, a big mansion for the king was built, making it 10 00 in total. That was 1400 years ago. However, due to natural disasters and invasions it got damaged with the time.

In 1642, His Holiness the 5th Dalai Lama reunited the three Tibetan regions and set up the Government of Ganden Phodrang. The Potala became the government's main office and the palace of successive Dalai Lama's reincarnations. In 1645, the 5th Dalai Lama started building the base of the Red Palace which was completely finished in 1690. From 1690 – 1694, the Prime Minister Sangye Gyatso renovated the White Palace which then became the Potala Palace as we know it today.

The current palace has 13 floors; it is 110 feet high and covers the area of 130,000 square feet. In the palace, there are many temples, chambers, halls, offices, monk's quarters, storage rooms, a library, school, court, and balconies. Therefore, it is like a small city.



## ম্<mark>মানু</mark>দা

# Saka Dawa

Saka Dawa is the name of the fourth month of the Tibetan calendar. It is the most important as well as precious month of the year for all Buddhists because it is the month of Buddha's holy activities - birth, ordination, conquering Mara, achieving buddhahood, and passing away. On the 15th day of the month, the three main greatest activities took place: Buddha's birth, achieving buddhahood and passing away. Therefore, during this month and especially on the 15th day, Buddhists visit monasteries to pay homage to deities, practice generosity, offer things to the ordained, give freedom to animals, they don't eat meat and try to accumulate as much merit as possible without doing non-virtuous actions.





*ਜ਼ੑੑ*ੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑਗ਼ੑੑੑੑਗ਼ੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑੑ

ૹુભાષનાનેન્સ્સે સ્વાશાયાલવાન્યાં અન્સ્સ સ્વીગ્ફ શાર્ કુવાબેન્સ્યાલવાન્યાં અન્સ્યી દુશા કેવ્રે સે માયલવાને સ્વી સેન્સાયવા વેન્સાય સ્વાય સ્વીય સેન્સી સેન્સ બેવાબાના સેન્સાય સેન્સી સેન બેના નગુ શુવાયો છેન્સી નેવે માયુન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સ સેવાબાન્સી નગી સેન્સી સેન્સીન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સ સેન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીની સેન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીની સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સીન્સીન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સીન્સી સેન્સીન્સી સેન્સીન્સી સેન્સીની સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સીન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી સેન્સી

ସିଁମ୍ ह୍র 193 ଛିଁ ୬୦ ଓ ସିଶ୍ୱି ସାବ୍ୟ ସାନ୍ଦିଶ୍ୱ ସାବ୍ୟ ସାନ୍ଦି ଏହି ଛିନ୍ଦ୍ୟରି ଅଟନ ଷାମ୍ମା ସିଂସାଷ୍ଟ୍ୟରି ଅନ୍ତ୍ର ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅବସ୍ଥି ସେମ୍ବର୍ଦ୍ଧ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ ସାମ୍ ଶ୍ରିଷା ସାଧ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ହିନ୍ଦ୍ର ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ପ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ବ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍ୟ ଅନ

શું મ ચેં નાયમ છે છે ગાસુ અવે ચેં નાયમ મારી છે છે કે આ માર આ મેં આ માર છે. આ મુખ્ય મુખ્ય મેં આ મુખ્ય છે છે છે છે છે છે. આ મુખ્ય મુખ મુખ્ય મુખય મુખ્ય મુખ્ય

# Tibetan Losar

As any other country or nationality, Tibet also celebrates the New Year (Losar) which also counts as the first day of the first month of the Tibetan royal year. However, in the evening of the 29th day of the 12th month of the Tibetan calendar, people eat Thukpa which is called Guthuk literally the Ninth Thukpa. By eating Guthuk, people wish to abandon old illnesses, bad habits, and old obstacles. In the oncoming New Year, people also wish health and happiness to other sentient beings.

The 30th day of the 12th month is called gNam gan, literally "full sky", and is the last day of the year. It is the dawn of the oncoming year. On that day, people clean their houses thoroughly. Once finished, people put up decorations, set the tables with food, drinks and offerings.

The first day of Losar is called "Lama's Losar". On that day, people get up early in the morning and go to monasteries to visit their lamas. When they get back home, they offer phye mar to their neighbors as an auspicious sign. However, they do not enter the house; people celebrate the first day of the New Year at home.

The second day of Losar is called "Losar of Kings". Traditionally, people visit their relatives' homes and invite them over to their house. They eat a wide range of dishes and drink refreshments, sing songs, dance etc.

The third day is called "Losar of Dharma Protectors". On that day, people make smoke offerings and hoist prayer flags on roofs. In order to bring good luck, they make offerings to deities and protectors.

Generally, even though the third day is the last day of Losar, based on the financial situation of families as well as the customs of their region, Losar can be celebrated for up to 15 days.

### WORKBOOK

In order to practice skills learned in the main textbook, students are advised to use the workbook. Organized in the same manner as the textbook, it is very easy to use. Exercises in the workbook are clearly arranged according to the parts in the main textbook.

No answer key is provided since all the answers can be found in the main textbook.

#### LISTS OF ABBREVIATIONS

This workbook uses many standardized abbreviations. Here is their list arranged in alphabetical order.

(H)	honorific language
(C)	colloquial language
(L)	literary language
aff.	affirmative
arch.	archaic
fut.	future
lit.	literally
neg.	negative
pl.	plural
pos.	positive
sg.	singular
sone	someone
sth	something
n.	noun
pron.	pronoun
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
v.	verb

Work Book 🧇 Section 1 📲 र्स्टिंग 🖓 भेरिक न मिल के भेरिक न मिल के भेरिक न मिल के भेरिक न मिल के भीर क

Section 1 | Part 1

### The Thirty Consonants স্মন্দ্র নৃজ্য হ্রা

S1.P1.E1 Reading the alphabet

Practice reading the consonants in rows. Repeat as many times as you need in order to remember the alphabet by heart. Pay attention to the tones as well as aspirated or non-aspirated pronunciation.

या'	<b>۲</b> .	শ'	۲:
ন্ত'	تھ	Ę	છે.
সৃ	দ	5	व.
51.	<b>Å</b> .	<b>ה</b> .	র্ম'
র্ড'	ਲ	Ę	ਲ'
୍ଟ.	'n	α.	લા.
र.	त्।.	~ <b>9</b> .	<u>م</u> ۲.
5	প্রে.		

#### S1.P1.E2 Reading practice

Repeat each consonant four times. Pay attention to the tone and right pronunciation.

1. <b>יו</b> ן׳יון׳יון	ואן אן אן א <b>א</b>	<b>ম্বা</b> ম্বাম্বা	<b>5</b> 5551	
2. <b>ন্ত</b> 'ড'ড'ডা	ത്.യ.ജ <b>.</b>	<b>E</b> :5:5:5]	<b>9</b> .9.9.9	
3. <b>५</b> .५.५.५	<b>হ্ল</b> :হ'হ'হ	5555	<b>न</b> 'न'न'न।	
4. <b>ส</b> าราราร	<b>ਬ</b> .ਕ.ਕ.ਕ)	<b>ה</b> יהיא	<b>a</b> 'a'a'a	
5. <b> </b>	<b>చ్</b> చాచ్.		<b>स</b> .स.स.स	
6. <b>ଜ</b> ଂଗଂଗ୍	<b>a</b> :a:a:a	<b>ת</b> .ע.ע.ען	<b>લા</b> .ભા.ભા	
7. <b>ব</b> 'ম'ম'ম্	<b>ਕ</b> .ਯ.ਯ.ଜା	<b>~9</b> ;9;9;9	<b>N</b> .N.N.N	
8. <b>7</b> .5.5.5	<b>B</b> . (A. (A. (A)			

### S1.P1.E3 Reading the alphabet in mixed order

या.	51.	ਛੋਂ:	व.	٩.
ন্ত'	π	5	α.	<u>ح</u> ٧.
র্ড'	تى	الم.	Ę	ন্ধে.
বে'	<i>स</i> .	Ę.	শ্বা	क्ष.
۲:	হ্ন'	カ.	z.	5.
ন্ট.	a.	5.	ર્ચા.	લ્પ.

Practice reading the thirty consonants first in rows, then in columns.

#### S1.P1.E4 Fill-in the blank exercise

Complete the alphabet by filling in the blanks.

या.		শ্ব	
	تھ		झ.
সৃ	হ		
<del>ب</del> ۲.			হ্য'
	ਲੱ	Ę	
ৰ'			વ્ય.
	a.		ক্ষ'
	ন্ধে.		

#### S1.P1.E5 Reading exercise

This exercise will help you realize the difference between aspirated and non-aspirated pronunciation, as well as high and low tones. Repeat <u>each pair multiple times</u>.

ן אין דין 1.	ठ.क	চ.খ	ম'শ	র্ড'র্ক্তা
2. শাম্য	ত'হ্	5.21	ম'ন	ৰ্জ <i>'ৰ</i> ্ছা
3. শিশ্ব	<u>कःह</u>	হ্র:শ্	ন'শ	<i>ਛੋਂ ਵੱ</i> ।
4. ন'ৰা	ৰ'ণ্ণ	5.31		
5. <b>ק</b> יק	হ:শ্বা	ন:জা		
6. <del>5</del> 'w				

S1.P1.E6 Spelling and reading exercise

Read the following nouns aloud. Try to remember some by heart.

শা'শে	শ্য'ন্য	ןה'אן	51	হ:মা	3	হ'মা	জ.মা	ব'র্ক্তা	ক্র	र्क्
ABC	pillar	snow	1	cook	fish	cigarette	mother	illness	part	salt
আ	79	জন্ম	মা	শ'মা	শ্বা	জ'ম্	티	וא	প'না	শ
odd	meat	father	mountain pass	parents	soil	beard	tea	mouth	deer	goat
-ম'ম্য	হ'ম্য	ح`ھا	3:51	الم] تم	শি'র্ক'মা			,		
female goat	food	these days	fisherman	different	chili					

Section 1 | Part 2

### How to Write

#### S1.P2.E1 Writing practice

Look at each letter and notice how it is written. Start from the top line and follow the strokes shown in the pictures. However, if you don't feel comfortable writing in this particular order, find your own way that will suit you and your handwriting.

Tibetan language does not impose rules on writing, just as Japanese language, for instance. Therefore, the following demonstration^[1] is supposed to ease you into writing in Tibetan and make it look nice.

^[1] Source: https://sites.google.com/site/chrisfynn2/home/tibetanscriptfonts/howtowritethetibetanscript



### Work Book 💠 Section 1 🛛 र्चेंद्र र्क्व र्क्वेयनेषा 🔶 क्वें कवर्ष दर्भो





### Section 1 | Part 3

### The Four Vowels নুরুন শানলা

S1.P3.E1 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out each syllable. Then, read the syllables without spelling - first in rows and then in columns

ß.	ર્સ્ટું.	àí.	र्थ.	٦. ٣
हे.	П	मे.	<del>5</del> 7.	र्देष:
र्हेः	ۍ تحک	Ĵ.	, in	Àġ
<u>ş</u> .	यो.	ରି.	કે	ષ્વે.
5	ALC .	હ્યેં.	છે.	ž
वे.	ž	ર્સ્ટું.	भू-	में।

S1.P3.E2 Exercise for the four vowels joined with the thirty consonants

Spell out each consonant and its vowel. After that, practice reading the consonants directly without spelling.

गी'गु'गो'गी	किंग्लि:मिःहा:मे	मी'सु'मो'में।	$\hat{r}$
<del>કે</del> .ઉં.કુ. <u>ફ</u> ો	ਛੇ ਲੁ ਲੇ ਲੇ	ÊĘÈÈ	કે ર કે કે કે
<u> টি</u> :ড্র:ট্র:ট্র	ने मु ने में	নিডনির্না	वे वु वे वे
ધે.સુ.મે.સા	वि:सु:वे:वे	ने'तु'ने'र्ने	સે સુ સે સે
<del>૬</del> .૨.૨.૨	ૹૻૺ ૼૹૼ૽ૼૹૻૺૼ૽ૼૹૼ	ÊĒĒĔ	से सु से से
<u> </u> ି ( ସି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବି: ବ	वि:बु:वे:वे	दे. दु. दे. दे	ધૈ'ધુ'ધે'થાં
<del>२</del> :उ:रे:र् <u>र</u> ा	લે લુ ને તેં	ૡૺૡૢૡૺૡૼ	ઐ.શુ.એ.ચે
ঈ:হৃ:ঈ:র্ন্য	બ્રે'બ્રુ'બે'બે <del>ઁ</del>		

### S1.P3.E3 Nouns formed by combining consonants and vowels

Spell out the words. Then, read the words without spelling. How many can you remember by heart?

मे	person
<b>८:र्हे</b> ।	we
<b>N</b>	who
R	mountain
٦	teeth
ক্ত্	water
बे।	fire
র্নিমা	milk
र्वेग	she
ĨĂ	he
প্রন্য	paper
ٱ	life
ৰ্না	yoghurt
કે:લી	twenty
ই্য	to buy
<u> </u>	apple
રેંસે	mouse
रेःबाँ	picture
तु.मा	breasts
बिंसे।	cat
हे:र्ग	close (adj.)
<u> </u>	smoke
કે [.] આ	day

ર્ડ.સા	some
হা-ন্যা	child
ଌ୕ୖ୳ୗ	hot
ব্য	boy/son
ભ.સુ	maternal aunt
<i>लु</i> :सें।	hat
कें।	year
র্শী-শা	leather
ক'ৰ্মা	niece
<i>ਛੋਂ</i> ਸੈੱ	nephew
ইন্ট্রা	male and female
<u>ৰি</u> 'না	peace
ĔĔ	elder brother
षःह्	elder brother
ৰ্শ	dice
वे आ	honorific language

### Section 1 | Part 4

### How to Write

S1.P4.E1 Writing practice

Practice writing the four vowels લેલુ લેલે.









### The Twelve Superscripts "Ra" স্যামন্ত্র নাই আ

#### S1.P5.E1 Drill exercise

Spell out the syllables with the Superscript "Ra" and the four vowels. Do not forget to change the tone of the feminine letters নাজনাৱা to a <u>higher</u> tone.

न ने रा ने

S1.P5.E2 Spelling and memory exercise

Spell out examples of words with the Superscript "Ra". Then, read the words without spelling. Close your book and try to write down as many words as you can remember. How many out of 10 were you able to get the right?



### Section 1 | Part 6

### The Ten Superscripts "La" অফার্যানিজ্ঞা

S1.P6.E1 Drill exercise

Spell out the syllables with the Superscript "La" and the four vowels. Keep in mind that you must change the tone of the feminine letters  $\eta' \varsigma' \varsigma' \varsigma'$  to lower and very feminine letter  $\varsigma'$  to a higher tone.

### ઋભૈભુભેભેં સભૈભુભે સાથે સુધે સુધે સુધે સુધે સુધે શુધે છે. સુધે સાથે સુધે સુધે સુધે સુધે સુધે સુધે છે.

S1.P6.E2 Spelling and memory exercise

Spell out the examples of words with the Superscript "La". Then, read the words without spelling. Close your book and try to write down as many words as you can remember. How many out of 10 were you able to get right?



### The Eleven Superscripts "Sa" ঝঝর্না নিস্তু নাইনা

### S1.P7.E1 Spelling exercise

Spell out the syllables with the superscript "Sa" and the four vowels. Remember to change the tone of the feminine letter arg to lower and very feminine letter sign are to higher tone.

ઋ૾ૺૠ૽૾ૺૠ૽ૼૺૠ૽૾ૼ	भ में मुं में में	<u> ૱૱ૼૹૼ</u> ૹૼ	સુ.સુ.સુ.સુ.સું.સું	ૹ઼ૻૹૢ૽ૺ <i>ૼ</i> ૹૢૻૹૢ૽ૼૹૢૻૼ	
<u> ૱</u> ૱૱૱	જ્ઞ જ્વે જુ જે જે	শ্বশ্বিশ্বশ্বিশ্বী	<u>श्वः भुः भुः भ्वेः भ्व</u> े	જ્ઞ જ્વે જ્યું જે જે	સુ:સુ:સુ:સુ:સુ:સું

S1.P7.E2 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the following words containing the Superscript "Sa". Then, practice reading them without spelling.

14	শ্থু:মাঁ	क्षुं खा	क्षु मे	শ্ব	۶IJ	Ł	R	<u>श्</u> च:म्	ইঁশ্ব	-
saddle	early	earof grain	ах	nose	body (H)	hair	neck	beard	white spot on a blue background	

Section 1 | Part 8

### The Seven Subscripts "Ya" พากุกาฬากุกุก

### S1.P8.E1 Spelling exercise

Spell out the syllables with the Subjoined "Ya" and vowels.

ଇ.ଗ୍ର.ଘି.ଗ୍ର.ଗୁ। ଅ.ଗ୍ର.ଜି.ଗ୍ର.ଗୁା ସ.ଗ୍ର.ଘି.ଗ୍ର.ଗୁା ସ.ଗ୍ର.ସି.ସ୍ତ.ସ୍ଥା ସ.ଗ୍ର.ସି.ସ୍ତ.ସ୍ଥା ସ.ଗ୍ର.ସି.ଶ୍ର.ଗୁା

### S1.P8.E2 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the words with the Subjoined "Ya".

ইি:শ	હો	ষ্ট্ৰ:শ	হ্র):মা	হ্ৰ:শ		শ্র	Ê
husband	fire (arch.)	mouse	sand	task	herd	people (arch).	dog

### Section 1 | Part 9

### The Thirteen Subscripts "Ra" ম'নদ্যাম'নস্ত্র'যায়্যমা

S1.P9.E1 Spelling exercise

Spell out the syllables containing both the Subscript "Ra" and a vowel.

या'यो'यु'यो'यों	াৰ্টা দ্বি ব্লোদ্বা দ্ব	यायी यु यो ये।	হ'ই'হ্'ই'র্টা	इ.इ.ई.इ.डू.	55555	<u>র</u> :রু:রे:র্রা
<u> સ.સ.સે.સે.સ</u> ્	૱૱૱ૼ <u>૱</u>	ষ'ষ্ট'র্'র'র্রা	ষশ্বি'শ্ব্ৰ'শ্বী	<u> শ্বান্ধী শ্বী শ্বা</u>	হ'ই'হ্'ই'ই	

S1.P9.E2

Spell out the examples of words with the Subjoined "Ra". Then, practice reading them directly without spelling.

	<u>رور</u>	हिद	क्त	হ্রি.খি	র্ন্বি'না	শ্	হ'শ	শ্ব:শ্র্যা	Â	ই্র্র্য মা	સુંસોં
th	rone	small throne	knife	multi color	anger	wheat	net (n.)	tiny	dance	egg of a louse	aunt (maternal)



The Six Subscripts "La" অস্বস্থান্ত্ৰণ

#### S1.P10.E1 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell the syllables with the Subscripts "Sa" and vowels. Remember to change the tone to higher and to pronounce the exception  $\overline{a}$  correctly.

### S1.P10.E2 Spelling and reading exercise

First, spell out the words with the Subscript "La". Then, read the words aloud without spelling. How many can you remember by heart?

ন্ধি না	ন্ন'ম্ব	<u>क्ष</u> :ने	題· 「 「	न्नु:र्ने)	स्तु	न्तु	यःसि
lung	lama	easy	moon	friend	naga	song	barbarians

### The Thirteen Wa Sur স্থান্থন্য সূত্র্যাধ্যমা

S1.P11.E1 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the words with the Subscript "Wa Sur". Then, read the words without spelling. Try to remember the words by heart.

দ্বি'দৃ	crow
ন্যু:ন্যা	an animal with a white face
হ্ব	calf
5	grass
लु से	hat
नुःर्हे	horn
প্র'ন।	deer
ৰ্ক্ব	salt

### Section 1 | Part 12

### The Fourteen Root Letters with a Superscript and Subscript নক্তবিধীয়ানত্ত নত্ত্বী

#### S1.P12.E1 Spelling exercise

Spell out the following words. Do not forget to change the sound of syllables, as well as the tone. Have a look at page 16 in your textbook for help.



#### S1.P12.E2 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the following words. Then, read them directly without spelling. Try to learn by heart as many words as possible.

### Work Book * Section 2 ট্রিন্টের্ স্রিন্টনা * ইার্চ্চর্যাণীশানা

ক্রন:দ্রা	zebra	मु अर्हे	ocean
<u>H</u>	grey	ষ্ট্ৰ) ক্রিনামা	society
ইন্ট্ৰ'ন	sadness	ર્શે ન ભયા	character
দিন:কূন্য	lonely	র্ষ্ট্র নালন্দ্র	practice
\$5-FT	happy	NET	hair
जी जार हो	king	र्श्व स्व	guitar

Section 2 | Part 1

### The Five Prefixes ই্র্বের্যান্থা

S2.P1.E1 Spelling and reading exercise.

Spell out the following words. Then, practice reading them directly without spelling.

ગુઢા નયા યતા અર્થે વના યહા વના થણ નવા ગણ નથા યણ યહા અર્થિ વર્ષે માલા નયો યહા અના વના અહી વર્ષે અહી વર્ષે અહી વા નર્યા યણ

#### S2.P1.E2 Fill-in the blanks exercise

Fill in the blanks with prefixes that go with the given consonants. For reference, use the table in your textbook on p22.





#### S2.P1.E3 Prefix practice with $\neg$ as the root letter

First, spell out the following syllables row by row. Then, read the syllables directly without spelling. Some of them have a meaning, some serve for practice purpose only.

531	ন্র্বা	নন্দা	ন্না
নহা	531	নহা	নইা
معا	বন্থা	पने।	الع
्रम्	ang B	न्द्री	ৎই
ন্থ্রা	নরা	ন্ইা	ন্ইা
বহা	ন্দ্রা	त्रचे।	ন্দ্র্যা

### S2.P1.E4 Prefix practice with ज्यहाइ द as root letters

Spell out the following syllables. Then, read the syllables directly without spelling. Some of them have a meaning, some serve for practice purpose only.

নশী	শ্	নশ	নশ্
प्त्यी	ন্য্	प्रम	ल्मे
নশী	নশ্	नग	নৰ্মী
ঝর্মী	म्	म्रम	ঝর্মি
حثرا	9.51	هجر	RE
٩	351	न्दी	٩٦
ন্দা	751	न्ने	ন্দ্র্
متمكم	য়ঀ	عدكما	ممكراً
هجرا	951	هجز	٩Ĕ١
মই্	মর্টা	मही	মই

S2.P1.E5 Spelling exercise for prefixes קיקיבָיקי serving as root letters.

First, spell out the syllables. Then, read the syllables directly without spelling. Some of them have a meaning, some serve for spelling purpose only.





### The Ten Suffixes ই শত্দ্বাত্বস্তা

S2.P2.E1 Spelling and reading exercise

Practice the ten suffixes by spelling the following syllables. Then, read the syllables without spelling. 기 지 기 도' 도러 지도 개도 전에 따라 지도 지원 대자 다리 다도 도에 가지 하는 다리 다. [편집] 국도 중에 도도 중에 제도 다리 다. 편집] 국지 국지 국지 도 중에 지도 다리 다.

#### S2.P2.E2 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the words with the ག་ང་ག་མ་ར་ག་ suffixes. Then, read the words without spelling. Practice many times until you get the pronunciation right. Remember to change the sound and tone accordingly.

मो नगमा यमा गर्भमा मिंग हेंगा सर्केना मेंगा हेंगा हेंगा हेंगा मिंगा समेंगा यहिंगा नहेंगा नर्णमा नर्भ्रमा मो यमा भेंगा समेना सर्मना गना भ्रुना ग्रेंगा मेंगा मेंगा समा नगना मिंना नगना होंगा नर्णमा नर्भ्रमा मो यमा भेंगा मना भ्रेंगा हेंगा नेगा भ्रेंगा मेंगा होंगा नेगा स्वाना स्वाना स्वाना स्वाना नहना मो खंगा गया गहया यया भ्रेंगा गर्हेया मिंगा वहींया हेंगा वर्मेया वर्क्या भ्रया छ्या वर्म्या नर्जना मो खंगा गया गहया यया भ्रेंगा गर्हेया मिंगा वहींया हेंगा वर्म्या वर्क्या भ्रया छ्या गर्हेया गर्हेगा मो खंगा गया महया यया भ्रेंगा गर्हेया मिंगा वहींया हेंगा वर्क्या वर्क्या भ्रया छ्या गर्हेया गर्हेया मो खंगा वया महया वर्म्या गर्ह्या भ्रेंगा गर्हेया मिंगा वहींया केंगा वर्क्या वर्क्या भ्रया छ्या गर्हेया गर्हेया मो याग यवना नह्या वर्म्या भ्रुंगा वर्ग्या भ्रेंगा मना नगरा वहारा वर्क्या नर्ठ्या करना भ्रेंगा वर्ह्या कर्या क्रंगा वर्म्या मो याग यवना नहवा वर्क्या वर्म्या न्याया ग्रांगा वहारा वर्क्या नर्ठ्या वर्ज्या न्याया माहवा वर्ग्या नर्य्या गण्या माया यागवा वर्णवा वर्णवा नर्या वर्क्या वर्क्या नर्या गणवा गर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्जना नर्या नर्णवा न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा नाणवा न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया नर्णवा नर्णवा नर्णवा न्याया न्यायाया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्यायाया न्यायाया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्याया न्य

#### S2.P2.E3 Spelling and reading exercise

Spell out the following words containing the অন্দ্ৰজ suffixes. Then, read the words without spelling. Practice many times until you get the right pronunciation. Don't forget to change the sound and tone accordingly.

ل له م

رع)

गणा नणा अणा मेंगि प्याणा नर्झेणा नर्मेणि पहिंगा नज्ञणा पहंणा प्रमुणा नर्झुणा नमणा नुणा कुणा झेंगा ह्युणा नणा पविणा केणा नर्डेगा

ळेत्रा तत्रा प्येता गत्रा प्रयेता यक्षुत्रा यित्रा श्वेता नर्गोता गुता प्रयेता श्वता श्वेता यक्षुता यक्षेता ये श्वेता ध्येता यक्षेता गुता ٢٦٦

રજ્ઞા ^{કે}ના નેના ગેના ગોના ધેના નગોના લેના ગર્જીના બોર્ચના ગજ્ઞના બહેના ગજ્ઞના ભારતા શાના સાના નહેના ભાષના ^{જે}ના હિં^જો

রশা অশা মশা দেহশা স্ক্রীন্দা মদেশা এন্দা অন্ধা অন্ধ্রী এন্দ্রা ব্রহ্মা হাঁশা বন্ধ্রীনা বন্ধ্রীনা বন্ধ্রীনা বন্ধ্রশা ব্রহ্মা ব্রহ্মা র্জ্রশা রূপা বন্ধ্রশা বন্ধ্য বন্ধ্রশা বন্ধ্রহ্মা ব্যক্ষা ব্রহ্মা বন্ধ্র্যশা বন্ধ্র্যশা বন্ধ্রশা

Section 2 | Part 3

### The Two Post-Suffixes অন্তর্ব

S2.P3.E1 Spelling and reading exercise for post-suffixes st and 5

Spell out the words. Then, read them aloud without spelling. Practice reading as many times as necessary in order to get the pronunciation right.

দমমা অনমা শ্রদামা হ্রমমা স্ক্রীনমা শ্রনমা বানমা রমমা মঁমমা মনমা নস্ক্রীনমা নস্ক্রীমমা নস্ক্রীনমা এগ্রদামা মমমা নিমমা নগ্রনমা বন্ধমা ব্যামা এগ্রমমা নম্যামা নন্দনমা স্ক্রীনমা নস্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা বিষ্ণা ব্যায়মা নাম্যামা নস্ক্রীবনা নস্ক্রীবনা নস্ক্রীন্দা নস্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা নস্ক্রীন্দা নস্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা বিষ্ণা নস্কর্মনা স্ক্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীবনা নস্ক্রীবনা নস্ক্রীবনা নস্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা শ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীবনা নস্ক্রীবনা নস্ক্রীন্দা নস্ক্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা ন্দ্রীন্দা স্ক্রীন্দা

S2.P3.E2 Fill in the blanks

Fill in the blanks with the post-suffix  $\mathbf{A}^r$  or  $\mathbf{a}$  according to the grammar rule.



#### S2.P3.E3 Fill in the bubbles

Recognize each part of the following word. Write the name both in <u>English</u> and <u>Tibetan</u> in a suitable bubble.



#### S2.P3.E4 Recognize the root letter

Recognize the root letter in each of the following words. Write it in the space provided.

[ארין	শস্থ্যব্য	สา	নশ	নন্তা	জয়া	
সন্থা	ন্শ্ৰীশা	নচন্মা	ধন্	ক্রনাশ।	ধনমা	
ননমা	বালা	নস্থ্যাখ্য	নন্শ	বদৃন্	53531	
নমন্দ্র	275	متركم	ารา	নঝন্যমা	ব্যাশ্বা	
ন্যন্যম্য	অন্যাশ্বা	শ্ববৃদ্য	ন্হা	ন্যা	হয়।	
নহা	শন্থ	মাদক্ষা	নন্ধুনঝা	অবাহ্য	<b>ন</b> প্ৰথমা	
กลรๆ	নঈুনা	ৰ্নম্য	র্তুয	মাশ্বন	धेंवा	
ন্তৃষ্যা	দিষশ্ব	ননশ্	মাধ্যমা	RITAN	নানঝা	

## रहें व ग्रुर सेनब सर र नगत न हु लु

### Vocabulary exercise

Fill in the blanks with a word that matches the picture.



Look at the pictures. Write statements according to the examples.





Match the sentences in English with their translations.

यान्नेयसा	Write.
हिन्-रूम् अह्यान्यान्याद्यां हुमा	How are you?
ân l	Read.
हिन्-रन्भी सेन्-याने-नेन्	Close the book.
हिन् रूप्तं वि राजना का राजना के राजना का राजना क	Nice to meet you.
नदे रेग भेव रमग	What is your phone number?
नेन'म' क्रेंन भा	What is your name?
র্মিশৃশ্য	Listen.

Translate into Tibetan

What is your name?	
What is this?	
See you tomorrow.	
Thank you.	
Sorry.	
Listen.	
What is it?	

Fill in the blanks with Tibetan numbers.



दहें द ग्रुर येनर्भ मर दगत नर्भ ल्य

Write down the days of the week in Tibetan.

Monday	
Wednesday	
Friday	
Thursday	
Tuesday	
Sunday	

Translate into English.

מדימראון	
নৰ্ন্সশ	
অস্থিনমা	
<u> ব</u> িন'মি'শ্রিমা	
ন্ধি:ক্রিন্মা	
মন্দ্রা	

What is the day today?

Write full sentences according to the example.

ই্র্যিন'ধ্রুম্য'শৃ:	<u>ने</u> सेम् ज्याहर के से स
র্ম্নন-ধ্রুদাদে:	ने'रेन'ग्वव
র্ম্নিন:ধ্রুদা:শৃ:	ने रेन् जाबय या रे रेन्।
র্ম্নিন:ধ্রুদাদে:	ने रेन पाइव
र्द्धेन:सुमागः	ने रेन्प्याबयया से सेना
র্ম্নন:ধ্রুদা'শি:	ने रेन पाइव (Wednesday)

র্ম্রুন-শ্রুন্য-শ্য:	ने रेर जावप्र जा रे रेन्	
র্ম্নন শ্রুনা দি:	<u>ने</u> सेतः यात्रव	اللغين (Friday)
র্ম্রন শ্রুনা শা:	ने रेर जावप जा रे रेन्।	
র্ম্রন শ্রুনা দি:	ने रेर जावल	र्तेत् (Thursday)
র্ম্রন শ্রুনা শা:	ने रेन्द्र मात्र के रेन्त्र	
র্ম্নন শ্রুন্য নি:	ने रेर जावल	र्Monday)
র্ম্রন শ্রুনা শা:	ने रेन्द्र मात्र के रेन्त्र	
ষ্ট্রন:ধ্রুদাদ:	<u>ने</u> :रेन:ग्राहल	र् (Saturday)

Write the answers down. What greetings do you say...

in the morning?	
in the afternoon?	
in the evening?	
How do you ask:	
How are you?	
How are you? (H)	

#### Exercise

Form questions by filling in the blanks with ખેંત્ર /રેત્ર and ત્રચ.

१) ষ্ট্রিন্ নেন্ দ্রুন্	](
१) मिं र्श्वेन सुग	(  )
২) নশ্র:এম:ন্র:ম:	(  )
<) વર્ને : શું ગું.	(  )[
<ul> <li>(1) हिन्दर्ग्रम्द्र्य्त्या</li> </ul>	()[
<li>() वर्ने र्ह्सेनः मुं</li>	]()
2) र्ह्वे नहर हिन रर में राज्यम्य	(  )[
১) য়ৄ৾য়য়য়৾য়৾য়ড়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়	(  )[

Write affirmative answers both in short and full.

<u> </u>	*****	
af क्रिंग्व	*****	
الآم: تَقْ بَحُم بَنْ تَعْ بَحُم بِ	*****	
য়৾৾৾ড়৾৾য়৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾য়য়	*****	
र्वि नयो काव देन मार्ग	*****	

Write negative answers both in short and full.

র্মিন:ব্লু:ম:২২,গম্ম	•••••	
प्दी विंगमाह सेन प्रमा	******	
ٱڡٚۧڗ؞ۿٚۥٚۊٛ٦ؚ؆ڂ؞ٵ۪ٛؾ؆ۿٚڹڂ٦؆؆	1	
क्ते विंद वी विश्व र रेत राष्	*****	
<u> ষ্টিন্'ম্ন' অই'ম্</u> শ্ব	*****	
ૡ૽૾ૢ૾૾ૠૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡ૾ૻ૾ૡ૽૿ૢ૽૽૽ૺૼૼ૽૽૽૾ૺૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૢૻ૱	*****	

Translate into Tibetan:
This is my pen.
Is this your book?
Is this his whiteboard?
This isn't Rinchen's dog. This is Yeshe's dog.

র্ম্রন কর দ

(四) Unit One

This isn't her table.

_____

Is this their chair?

_____

Is this their chair? (H)

_____

#### Matching exercise

Match the answers in the second column to the sentences in the first column.

ন্ত্রনাম'জা	, मायमान् में भी का
র্লিনামান্যন্দিন্দীনামা	< त्वर भाष्यें भी भेरि
न्मेन्द्र सं नने के मा	त्रुग'र्धेन्'
<i>ڲؘ؆</i> ؆؆ۼ؆ۺٚڋٵ	नने में भेता मुगम हे के
শ'শশ্	য়৾ৼ৾ৼ৾৾ৼ৾৽ঀ৾৽ঀ৾য়৸
<u>८:यदे:सॅ</u> :खेबा	છેનું મુન્યત્વું છે. આ ગુજરાત છે.
র্বিশাশ:হ:দ্বদশ্য	લાલા
ૹૢૢૻ૽ૻૣૻ૽૾૱૾ૻૡૻૻૹ૾૱ૻૹ	न्वेन्द्र नने लेगना

Translate into E	nglish		Write in full the numbers i
	-		Tibetan.
हिन्-रूप्-प्र-सेनर्भाषी	थेवा		a(/
^ૹ ૣૻૢૣૣૣૻૣૻૣ૱ૣ૱ૻ૱	งๆ		۶۶ 
ફે શ સ કુ ગાયે દા			(*
२ळस.७ळस.७म्री.मी.लुवी			·
ᠵᡃᢍᠵ᠂ᠴ᠋᠋ᡪᢆᡸᢚᡆ᠋᠋			عه ۱۲
B. 45. B-12-24	1		
พन-ज्युन्-ज्युन्य-नून्			3 95
			al
			0
Answer the que	stion Use various	s places that you ha	ve learned in $\eta e^{}$
this lesson.		s places that you ha	۲
			90
নানন	ŋ		
	, 		η2 ^μ
	3		nn
য়৸৸ৼ৾য়৾য়৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ	2		 3
	3		,
	,		•
ગપ્રત્રસેનશ્વગ્રું ધેઠ્યુ	2		2
	ર		 זאַ
Write question	s to the answers.		Write the questions in negative.
	<u></u>		
	u u	८:र्श्चेन:सूर:प्येर्गे:पाःधेवा	
	भेवा	८ मिंट मी जु से बा	
	रेन्	ڲٚ ^ۥ ڛڗ؞ڗڟٛڹ؏ۥڲٚڹڂ٦ٳ	

⁻ સપ્તેના વર્તે પ્લે જ્ઞું શુપ્તુ સપ્તેના

< न्दे में से बा

ন্দ্রীবা

-মিন্বা

26

Write down all the odd and even numbers in Tibetan from 1-20.

سا odd numbers	
even numbers اھ	

#### Translate into Tibetan.

Isn'tthismypen?
She isn't your paternal aunt.
Isn't this her school?
This isn't their home.
Is this our post office?
Thisishisrestaurant.

Write down your answers.

<ol> <li>In the morning we say हेन् नाम का का</li></ol>
Answer:
2. Is sentence તેન વને સુત્તેનુ correct?
Answer:
3. ઽૻૹ૽ૼૼૻ૾ૼ૱ૼૼ૱ૻ૱૱ૢૢૻ is wrong because
Answer:
4. Why isn't sentence בקרבה מלומיאילק
correct?
Answer:

Write a simple conversation between two people based
on what you've learned so far.

झुःसे	
र्क्ट्रेगुरु:सेन्	
सुःसे	
व्हिग्राखंदा	
ક્ષર્સો	
व्हिग्राखंदा	
સુ.સે	
व्हिग्रायायेन्।	

Missing dots. Put a  $\hat{\mathfrak{F}}_{\mathfrak{T}}$  where appropriate. Rewrite the sentences.

ફિન્સ્ટ્સુવારૂવાશ્વવર્ષ્ટે વે દે
โล้รสูตโล้ผงริรุณฑุ
ૡ૾૾ૢ૾ૣૹૻૺૠઽૡ૽૿ૡ૽ૢૺ૱ૺૢૢૢૡૹૣ
୩୳୵ୖ୶୶୬ୄଅୖୄ୴ୠୣ
ન્ક્ષુનાવન્યવર્શેનીધેના
Make sentences.
ম' / त्येमाश' / र्वेमाश' / चन्ते।
প্তিদগ. / র্ভুনাগ. / হা

ळे:/हे:/ध्रुग य
મશ્ર'/୩૩ગશ'/ર્સે'/ સું'/ ગપે'/ ધેઠ્ય
୲ୠ୵/ॱ୕୳୷୕୵/ୖ୴୶୕୵୵୕ଽଽ୵୳୶୲
୴୕ୖ୷ୄ୵ଽୄୖୡ୶୲୵ୡୣ୲୩୕୵୶୲
พืส:/สูग:/गै:/सिंन:/२८:/हिंत:/अग्ना

### Correct the wrong word order.

#### Write questions to the sentences. _____ _____ 1 _____ _____

_____

1. หร้าห้รารจัดาย	<b>±</b> .
ן.ר פורך ררי.ד	2
2. आ दे ' में दी मिंदी	3
3. af B. to rai	4.
4.नने र्भे प्लन्न में हे है ज़ुगुरू।	5
5.र्वेग्	

#### Crisscross. Find 11 countries

हे ने' Ŵ ₹. 5 <u>ج</u>: थ. <u>J</u> Ŧ छे. છે. 5. 5. GV. ર્સે q. Ť दे. ₹` न. Ц. 5 री. Ð. ন' ୟ' લી. ମ୍ବ. લે. न' শ' કે. а. <u>ج</u>: Ð हे. à. ŝ ম্ব' ₹: сη. र्ಹ' <del>ক</del>. ží. गु. 5. জ্বে. £. Ð. ð. ã. ই: শ' તું 51. न. 1. ---- 2. ---- 3. ---- 4. ---- 5. ---- 6. ----7. ----- 8. ----- 9. ----- 10. ----- 11. -----Fill in the blanks with suitable words. sor so? Choose the appropriate nominalizer. - न्यवाञ्चनाः नर्येश्वायने खेनाया हिन्स्टर्मा ------मारेस्तना <u>ड्</u>रे.रे.हे.ल...-... द्देवः----। न्मयाध्वमाः म्दे सेमाया------ नेम् લા.ર્ટુ.ટ્.___ નક્ષુન ર્જ્ઞેના: નનવા સ્વાવ્યવાયા હિનન્ટ----થોના শী শব a สีงามิราฐา-----નક્ષુન ર્સ્વેના: હિન મન મન સુચાયલય જેવા માંગ Answer the questions: ופרידרייון אשלק מימי ויוידי אדין नक्षुत क्रेंताः हिन्रू राख में तुरु ----- यया ଞିମ୍ र्म्स् गांवर्र्श्य धेवा ------न्मन्मः भेवा म्प्युः र्स्तावर्ग्धवा म्वे ग्याना भेगवन्देन פארידרייון ישישישישישישי אידךן -----ટ્વેઽ્ '૨૬'ક્તુવ્ય'શ્વ સ'પ્પેફ'યશ|-----हिन्दर्गो र्वेगश्व र्थे सुदिन्------ हुन्। देशय दुर्गा भेषा निर्मय भेषा र भाषा हिन्दर दुर्गा स्थान----- हुन्। देशय दुर्गा भेषित ଞି୍ମ र्र्र् भे 'श्रेश्व'गा'या'रे रेरी _____ ન્સ્ટ્રન:ર્સ્સ્ના: પાપ્પા -----ં શુનાપેંદા ₽ित्ररूमी 'मॅीमारू' से दि प्यरूग मामारेत्रेत्रेता -----
Fill out the table. Which suffixes precede ল্বিন্য'উন্য' and শ্বিন্য ?

 - বিশ
 - উদ্য
 - শ্বিশা

Fill in the blanks with ন্বিন্য উন্থ প্ৰ

দ'দশী'ক্ষ্ব'	मेत्रा	
দংষ্ট্রনি:ধ্রুদা:	धेवा	
<u> ২৬.৯.৯.৬৯</u> ৬% শ্ব		- <del>रे</del> न्।
<ul> <li></li> <li></li></ul>	a	ष:रेन्।
किंग्धे मेंगूर्य केंग्व केंग्व		- <del>रे</del> ट्र'यश्वा
ઽૻૹ૾ૼૼૡ૽૾ૺૡૢ૿૱૱ૹ૽૾ૼૼૹૻૻૡૹૻ	ÀT	<del>रे</del> 5'रार्ग्रा
মিঁদ:র্ক্টনি'ন্দ্যাব'নেইব'র্কিং	พ.พ.ร.ฐาสา	रेन्।

How do you ask...

------about someone's job? ------if someone's unemployed? ------if someone's a Christian? ------if someone's from the capital or a village? -------if someone's from Nepal? How do you say...

1 What's your name (H)?
2 What's your name?
3 It's nice to meet you (H).
4 It's nice to meet you.
5 Hello.
6 Where are you from?

Vocabulary check. Match the words in Tibetan with its counterparts in English.

policeman	দ্দ্রিব'ম্যা
actress	শ্বব-ৰিশপ্ৰা
mechanic	विस्र रेंद्र य
director	ষ্ট্র'ন্দ্রি'ম/শ
witer	ৰ্নম:ৰ্.মা
lawyer	ন্দ্রার নেই বা
singer	ইন্স'ন'র্ন্য
nurse	हेव हेंगान्ग
receptionist	নই অশ্বা
waiter	শ্বৰুশ-শ

On a piece of paper, write a conversation using the following words.

Fill in the blanks in the conversation.

र्केन:न्देग्ना:	র্লিনাথমে()
জান্তনা অন্যাক	૫: લૅંગઅપ્રાયને ભેગુશા હેન્સ્ટાયાર્લે ()પશ્ચ
ळॅंद:दर्भेवा:	શ્વેન નર્વેન્સ'ન્ય () દેં સ'લેન
জান্তনা:	ष्ठुणश्रः हे के दें सामे दर्गे श मांगे कुराम दे भा () रेट्र
र्केंद्र:द्र्येंबाः	गी में माडेगा भ फ़ेव क्वेर ७०० रेना
জান্তমা :	ક્ષ્ય ગૈ 'સેં' સેું ત્ર' () ગૈ પ્લેલા
ळॅंदःदर्भेषाः	().
জ্ঞান্তব্য :	हिन् रूप रेंग येतः ()मर्था
र्केंदरदर्भेषाः	थॅन न थेंन
জান্তমা :	٢٠٩٠٤ वग मे तर () अून रे वाया () अ वा कें न रे न
र्ळेन्न्न्र्येत्राः	र्हेगायेतःयः() १९७२ेट्रायम्भ

Practice writing Tibetan numbers. Follow the example.

91	C?	ন্ন্যু'নস্তু'র্ন্যান্টনা
67		
34		
52		
89		
71		
46		
28		

Write possible questions to the answers.

Write suitable reactions.
শাৰ্বি'শ্বশ
ૹ [੶] ૽૿ૣ૽ૺૺ?ઌ૿ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ૽ઌૢૺૢૻૢ૽ૢૢૢૺૼ૾ૺૼૹૻૺ [ૣ] ૼૺૹૻૻ૱ૼૺૻૢ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૺૼૻૺ૾૾ૺૺૺૼ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ૾૾ૺ
न्वेनिश्वन्त्व मन्यः इस्रायः सेन्
षुग्शः हे 'ळे।
^{દ્ય} ેન્'ર્ન્ડ વ્ય [ા] ર્થે સુદ સ્વયુ ⁻ ર્ય વ્યુક્ટ સ્વયુ ⁻

Which particle is used for the following sets of numbers?

40	
80	
20	
60	
30	
70	
90	
50	

गु:५९:२े:क्रॅंर'गी'र्थे'गठेगा'ལ་५ैद'र्झेर'१००'रे८
ਞ [.] ૡૻૻૡૼૡૻ૽ૡ૽ૼૡૻ૽ૼૡ૽ૻૡ૽૾ૡૼૡૻ૱
ઐရ] ૬શ.૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨૨
रेन झुल'ने लासु र्झेन २० रेन

Translate into Tibetan.

1. Do you have a pen? No, I don't have a pen.

_____

2. Does she have a cell phone? Yes, she has a cell phone.

-----

3. Do you have a liter of milk? No, I don't have a liter of milk.

-----

4. Do you have many T-shirts? Yes, I have many T-shirts.

-----

Rewrite the sentences by adding colors and adjectives you have learned in this unit.

<ol> <li>ร. ร.ซ.ศร.ร.ลิุฑ.ซัรา</li> </ol>	ᢉ᠍ᢒᡪ᠋ᡃᠵ᠋ᠵᢁ᠂ᠼᡄ᠋᠉᠂ᠺᡆᡏᢆ᠇᠄᠊ᢎ᠆᠄ᠬ᠋᠄ᢅᡠᠮ᠋᠄ᢍᢅᡗ
$3,  5 \in [4, 5] \times [5, 5] \times [5, 5]$	ફિન્'ર્સ્ટ ફિન્'ગ્રૈ'ર્સ'સ'શ્ર'ન્ગલ'ર્સે'ર્લેન્'ર્સ્થ
<. ^દ ંધોના	ૡૻૼ:૨૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻ૾ઌૢૻ૾ઌૢૺૺ૾ૻૼૺ૾ૻૡ૽ૻ૱૾૿ૡૻૻ૾ૡૻૻૡૻૻ૽ૼૻ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૢૻ૾૽૾૾ૺ૾૾ૻ૽૾૾ૺૡૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼ૾૾ૻ૽૾૾ૺૡૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૡૻ૽૱૾ૻૡૻ૽ૼ૾૽ૼૡૻ૽ૺૡૻ૽ૻ૽૽ૡૻ૽ૼૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽૾૽ૼૡૻ૽૾૾ૺૡૻ૽ૻ૽૽૾ૺૡૻ૽ૻ૽૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡૻ૽ૡ
	ૹ૾ૢ ૡૻઽૡૻૻૡ૾ૻ૱ઌ૽૽ૡ૽ૺૼૡૻૹ૽૾ૡૻૹ૽૾ૡૻૹ૽ૡૼૡૻૹૼૡૻૻૡ૾૾ઌઌૻૡ૽૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૽ૻૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡ૾૾ૡ
૯. ૬.ૡૻૻ: ૱ઽૹૻૡૡૼૺૼૼૠૼ૽ૡ૽૾ૺૡૻૻૡૻ	ારેઽ ઽઽ ઽ
9.	ૡ૽ૼૻ૱ૡ૽૿ૺૻૻૻૢ૱ૡૻૡૻૻૡૻ૽ૼૼૼૻૢ૱ૺૺૺૺ
ર	ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
३.	
۹	Rewrite the sentences. Put the words in the
ч	correct order.
۰ ۶	र्श्वेचर्न्न थॅन्।/ ८.ज./ हुलालेव:/विग/गश्वरायः
	८:/षि८:य:/सेन्। /न्याय:र्थे: /यॉ्ट:ळेद्र:र्थे:/ने:र्ळे:/य:
Rewrite the phrases in plural.	
શર્મો રહે લુ. શરે ને !	-2. /
×	ᠵᡆᢆ᠂/གᡧᠯᢆᡩ᠋ᢌ᠋ᡢᠯᠱᡇ᠋᠊/ᢂ᠄ᢂ᠂ᡘ᠋ᠬᠯᢂ᠂/ᡪᠵ᠋᠈ᡷ᠋ᡷ᠄ᢅᡸ᠂ᠱ᠋ᡪ᠋

Write true answers.

ผู้รารราสาญาสาณารายุณาร์านี้รายพบ

-----≹ेन्'इन'नी _____ ૡૡ૽૽ૼૺ ૬ૡૡ૽૱૱ૼૡૼૡૻ૽ૼૡ૽ૺ क्षुस'दर्भ]

ह्यॅं ह्यें प्यमाया /रेन् / मुडरा / मुद्रापर्विमाया/रवे

२: / मॅंदि: कुद: कुद: / दगार-पॅ: / दे: / दगार-पॅ: / २ / पॅंदा

Write five sentences asking "Do you	like?" and answer them.
হি:শ	ಷನ:
9.	<i>9</i> .
<i>१</i> .	१.
३.	३.
«	«
۲	Ч.

### र्द्धेनः केंत्र न्द्र में Unit One

Which copula(s) do we use...
... to say that something somewhere exists?
... to express "1 have"?
... to express "s/he has" or "you/they have" which you witnessed?
... to express "there is" as general knowledge?
... to express "s/he has" or "you/they have" as general knowledge?
✓ Which case is needed to express that "something somewhere exists" and "I have"?
✓ Name the 7th case particles:

Finish the sentences with थॅन / सेन or थॅन रेन / थॅन सरेन

१) न्दे'आ'स'यम् श'यम् हि'क्केद'र्से' दिम्।(-----)।
२) भ्यों न् र्भा सकें मां मी'न् यों द'र्मा 'ह'न्स्स' स्थ' प्य'प्य'(-----)।
२) न्दे' दन-'त्य' ह:(-----)।
२) धों र्न्स्त 'त्य' (-----)।
४) हिन् 'न्न-'त्य' क्वेन्स' प्वेर्म्स-'(-----)।
४) हिन् 'त्रन्त' क्व' प्य मार्थ मा ख्वमा खेमा 'हेमा (------)।
४) न्दे' रहेमा केंदे खुन-'य' न्ते '(------)।
४) न्दे' रहेमा केंदे खुन-'य' ने '(------)।

Translate the following sentences into Tibetan.

1. We have 3 yaks.	1.
2. Over there are three cars.	2.
3. Does your sister have a husband?	3.
4. There is a big school in Dharamshala.	4
5. Do you have a brother?	5
6. There are many monasteries in Tibet.	6
7. There are a few temples in England.	7.

Describe what do you have in your room. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

 -
_
_
_
 -
_
_
 -

Say the following numbers in Tibetan.				
૧૯૧૯ ૯૧ ^{૦)} ૧૯૯૧ ૧૯૧/૧૧૧ ૧૨૫ ^{૦)} ૧૯૫૯				
계 Write out the numbers in full.	م Do you know what happened in those years?			
	9ere			
9ese	(r ŋ 2 ¹			
(9 ² )	96°2			
96°2	<≈a/ <aa< td=""></aa<>			
<i>≤</i> ≈२/ <i>५</i> २२	9 天代 ²¹			
9 ³ ⁽²⁾	ንሮ୯၉			
9ere				

#### Numbers

When were your parents born? Write the answers in Tibetan numbers and then write out the numbers in full in Tibetan.

জ'ঝ'অবাশা	 
নান্দ্রশ্বা	 
135:751	 
র্মীনাম'র্ম /র্মা	 

#### Family tree

Fill in the blanks with the names of your family members.



Match the questions from column  $\overline{\gamma}$  with the answer in column  $\overline{\gamma}$ .

η

۴

Write a story about yourself.



Fill in the text with suitable words.

Rewrite the above story in the third person.

مَ ^٢ حج [.]

Replace all the words from the story you know so far with honorific language.





Match the vocal	bulary.		Using gerunds, write five short sen-
मनद्भः पर्वित्तः पदी। बुद्दिन्द्र व्या	1	ery weekend s week	tences concerning your daily life. Example: র্বিশ্বশ্বস্থ্র বিদ্বোদ্ধনাৰ
ૡઽૡઽૻ ૡૻૻઽૢૼૣ૾ૼૡ૿ૡૼૡ૱ૡઽૻ		ery day vays	9.
ឝৣ ^៲ ন:৾৾৾ <i>ৼ</i> য়৽য় ৾ৡ৾৽য়: <del>ঢ়</del> ঀ৾৽৸৲ঀ		metimes, occasionally xt month	१
ঀয়৾য়ৣঀ ঀয়৾৾য়ৼৢঀ৾৻ৼয়৾৽য়৾য়৾		quently t year	३.
শাবদশ দিবা মক্তর্মমান্য মার্ক্রমান্য মার্দ্		ually e day after tomorrow	e.
1, 21	1 1		
Translate the w	ords into Tibetan a	nd write them in plural	<i>ч</i>
Translate the w by using ज्ञराष्		-	х.
Translate the w by using ज्ञराष्		nd write them in plural g Nouns in Tibetan in pl	Use each particle in a short sentence.
Translate the w by using क्रारा Nouns in English		-	Use each particle in a short sentence.
Translate the w by using क्राया Nouns in English story		-	য় Use each particle in a short sentence. শ্
Translate the w by using क्रारा Nouns in English story songs		-	Use each particle in a short sentence. শ্ব শ্রু. শ্রু.
Translate the w by using ह्लाजा Nouns in English story songs poem		-	য় Use each particle in a short sentence. শ্

Practice gerunds. Translate the following sentences into English.



rectly. Correct any mistakes.

Decide which particles are used cor- There are 11 mistakes in the text. Find which particles are used incorrectly. Write the suitable ones in blanks.

1. ম'শ্রদাম'স্ট্র'র্ব্বের্মা	2
2. ସିଁର୍ଟ୍ ଭିଂସାଜ୍ୟା	ā
3. ট্রি'ম্বী'রশ্ব	1
4. ক্রুপ্র'র্ম'নগাণ	
5. สู สุग'พิ' ''	ĉ
<ol> <li>[यूम्य:यु:यॉय]</li> </ol>	1
7. দ্যী'ক্ল্ব'দ্দিশ	ļ
8. न्यें सर्हेन पहें त क्यू	1
9.ট্রি'শী'হ'ম্য	(
10.মর্ণী শ্রা	

अःवन्तिअं सिंदिः र्चेग् अः में हिं गालत् न्ग र्के न्न अन्म नुः गठन्में प्र्यायाया केन्से रेना NE रें के मी रेन मिं के तथा क्रुव मार्ड रें दि वह ला कुला भाषा का में ती के सुमा के सुमा के सि रु:उट-अयार्थे वियारेना। 9) ----- a) ----- a) ----- e) -----

(1) ----- (1) ----- (2) ----- (1) -----(2) ----- 90) ----- 99) -----

Write the rules for using agentive particles.

Translate the text from the exercise above into English.

Puruleu		
suffixes:	followed by:	
	শীশ্ব	
	ন্ট্রীক্ষ.	
	দ্রীর্ম.	
	_ঝ'/ঊঝ'	
Write short sent tive particles.	tences by using agen-	
-		
I		
-		
-&		

ણેજા.

Write out the given ordinal numbers in full.	Try to translate the following phrases into Tibetan. Use a dictionary if necessary.
1st	34th Kalachakra in Bodhgaya
6th	14thDalaiLama
15th	33rd king of Tibet
47th	4thTibetologyConference
68th	17thKarmapa
89th	

Write out in Tibetan what the time is. Use as many possibilities as you can.

2:35 am	
5:05pm	
0.19011	
3:54am	
6:20pm	
1:45pm	
Noon	
Midnight	

Always and never. Fill in the sentences with the following adverbs of time. Use each adverb only once.

	য়৽ঢ়ৢয়৽ড়৾৾ঀড়য়ৼ৸ৼ৾৾ঀ	দৃশ্যশ	ইিঁব'বশ্য	<i>ৰ্ম</i> :খন্য	শৃন্ঠশান্দ্রশা	₹'ন'ৰ্শা
<b>দশ</b>	নেম্ন-মেন-মাল	শ্বান্ট্র-শী	هرا			
নশ্র:পিঝ:গ্রীঝ:ক্রু:লাম:অ:ক্রনঝ:	ঀ৾ঀ৾৾ৼ		गर्हेन्:गी	ষ'रेন্		
ઽૡ૾ૺ૱ૢઽૻ૱૽ૺૡ૽ૢૺ૽ઙૣૼૼૼૼૼૻૢૼૼૼૢૢૼૼૼૼ૾૾ૼૼૼ૾ૢૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૼ૱ૼ૱ૻ	শ			ור		
छिन् रन्दां मे रन्ते निर्मे के राम राम	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	5	ঝুনা'ম'ন মুদ'ন	'ঊঁন্'নশ্বা		
মর্ক্ট'র্মিশ	র্নিমাঝ'ম'ম	<b>া</b> র্গাম'র্ম'ন	૬૬-ગ્રે ખેંન સ	: جما		
<u>র্দি</u> র্দে:র্ক্টম:প্	ส'มี) พร	<u>-</u>				

Write two sentences using "always" and two using "never".

1	 	 	 
2	 	 	 
3.	 	 	 
4.	 	 	 

Write appropriate questions to the answers provided.

 [૱] ઽૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
 ૡ૾ૻૼૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻૹૻૺૡૢૼઌૢૻૹૻૻૻ૱ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻૹ૾ૺૡૻૢ૾ૡ૽ૻ૾ૻ૾૾ૼૡ
 พีรุ ผสมมหาริรารมาส์ทุมาราชีราราศุฎราชิาพีรุ
 <u>ৼয়৽য়ৢয়৽য়ৼৢয়৽য়ৼৢয়৽য়৾য়ৼয়৾য়ৼয়৾য়য়৾য়য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾</u>
 ଢ଼ୗୄ୕ୣୄ୵୶୲୶୶୶୶୶ୖଽ୶୶୳୰୴ଽ୷ଽୢୖୠୄ୵ୄୖୄ୰ୖଡ଼ୣୣୗ

Answer the questions in Tibetan.	Write negative sentences in the present tense. Follow the example.
1. હિન મન્યવય સુવ ગાનુ શ બન્ય ગો બેંની 2. હિન મન્ય ગો શવ્ય સુવ ગાર ગાય મેં ગાનુ શ બહાન છે ખેંની	ઞૠૡ૾ૺૹૻૻ/ ૡૻ૽૱ઌૹૻૻૡૼૡૡઽૻૺૺૹૻૡૡઽૻૻૹ૽ૻૡૼૺ૱ૡૡ ઌૠ૾ઌ૾ૺૹૻ૾ૹ૽૾ૺૹૻૡૼૼૡૹઌૡૻૹૻ૾ૡ૾ૺૡ૾ૻઌૻઌૻઌૡૡ૱૱ૹ૽૿ૡૡ૱૱૱
3. હિન્પ્સ્ત્ય્વીશ્વ સુત્વાપ્ત્યનાવશ્વ ક્રુવ વાપ્તશ્વા વે પ્લિંગ 4.હિન્પ્સ્ત્ય્વીશ્વ વીત્ત શ્વેપ્ત્ર વે ક્રિયાયત્વ સ્ટ્રવ વ્યવે જે છે. 5. હિન્પ્સ્ત્ર રહે દેન્યા રહેન્પ્ય છે વ્યવે છે ખેતી	१) দক্টে / রু ক্রন্থ ক্রুণা / ধাদী শার্তদ র্শা ৭) ধ্রণাক্বঅব্য / র্শ্নি শ্রান্য ন্য ন্যে ন্র্র্র্ / দ্র্নাদ র্মা ২) ধাদী ক্লী স্ক্রব্র / ব্র্ব্তদ / র্জা প্রে আর্ট ব্রা ৬) দকা জারদ / র্জা দ্বি / দাল্লা ৬) দকা জারদ / র্জা ন্যান্য ন্য দ্ব্যাগ্রদান
1.	৫) হরি'জ'বেহ'/ রিঁমাঝ'রম'র' /র্ঝ'অহ'  ৫) হরি'রহ'রি /হ্যার'র্মি' / র্রামার্রিমা
2.	9.
3.	۹. 
4.	۲. د.
5.	۳
	( <i>c</i>

Write a short story about your day. Try to use as many adverbs of time as possible.

Find 15 grammar and spelling mistakes in the story.

 $(\mathfrak{g})$  ------ $(\mathfrak{g})$  ------ $(\mathfrak{g})$  ------ $(\mathfrak{g})$  ------

ያሢ) -----

41

Match the vocabulary with its meaning.



Cross the odd word out.

1)	শ'ম'দেই্নি	র্বিমা-ক্টমা	র্ইনা'ক্টমা	ন্দ্রুম:ম্
૧)	ন্দ্রী শ্লুন	ধ্ব মইি র	র্যা ব্যাৎমব্যা	Ū
	ব্বাশ ক্রেঁশ			
۳)	ষন'র্ক্তনা	দেহ:মিশ	মর্ম্র্র্র্র্ন্য্	39717751

Match the given adjectives with their antonyms. Use dictionary if needed.



Attempt to translate the following words.

<u> ই</u> ন্'শ্	
থিন'মা	
<u>ع</u> .«ا	
নপ্রি.মা	
নর্ই:শ্ব	

Translate the following sentences into Tibetan. Use the construction next line "Adj + its opposite adj +  $a_5$ :  $\hat{a}_{35}$ "

- I have many cars; some are fast and some are slow.
- ۶ Sonam has many books; some are thick and some are thin.
- 3 My younger brother has many friends; some are tall and some are short.
- Our neighbors have many children; some are young and some are old.
- ' There are many places in Tibet; some are cold and some are hot.



Finish the sentences by using appropriate words. Do not forget to include as at the end of the enumeration.



T Look at the picture. Use adverbs of place to write down where different rooms are in the house.



 $egic{1}{5}$  Choose one of the rooms and describe it.

Describe your house and its surroundings.

 -
 -
 _

Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative and superlative missing forms of adjectives.

	মর্হি'না	
শাৰুজ:ইটা		
		ই:ইশ্বশ
শ্রন:র্ম্বা		
	ক্তুদ:দা	
		য়৾৾ৼ৾৾ঀ৾য়৾
		<u>ৠৢ৾</u> ৼ৾৾ <del>ই</del> 'ঀ৾য়
ळेत्र:र्ग		
	শ্বন্থিয়া,শা	

Fill in the blanks with @ོད/་མེད་ནོང་ or ཡིན་/མིན་ནོང་,



Answer the following questions using ૡ૾ૻᡪ/'સેઽ'ਡ੮' or ખેત્'/સેત્'ਡ੮'. Look at the example to help you with the sentence structure.

हि <u>ि</u> न्स्टः क्रु. बान्दावाः व्यान्यः न्यावः दीं खेनिः यन्त्रा	શેના કુ.વામાયત્વાવર સુસાયમાર્ગે ભેંન કંમામવાય દેશે સેના
1 हिन्न्न्य्यीयायायाया केंद्र्या सेन्यया	
2 ने रेन हिन रन क्वेन मुन पर्यो नगे थे जे जे नग	
3 ફિન્ગ્સ્ટ વી આગ્ર અને આગ્ર સે	
ঀ য়ৢ৾৾৾ঢ়ৢৼৼৼ৾ঀ৾৽য়৾ঀ৾য়য়য়য়৾য়য়য়৾য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়	
5 নগ্রন্থী শার্হা দিন্দ না আলা দি দেই বা বা শা	
6 ફિન્સ્ટ વ્યુવાય વૃત્ કેન ખાવા વર્ષે શાર્રે ખેન વશાના	

Fill out the blanks with correct terminators.

지왕육 '역특숙·지크도' ( ) ] 판⁽⁴⁾ ' 재ळं न '왕ुग' ( ) ] 두 가 취 국 ' 재ळें ग' न ( ) ] 친 두 ' 대 ' 때 두 ( ) ] 판 대 ' 대 ' 때 주 ( ) ] 판 국 지 ' 가 하 국 한 자 ' 의 · 이 ) ] 때 ' 리 ' 지 왔 天 ( ) ) ] 위 두 ' 恋 ' 훈 피 자 · ( ) ] 지 다 자 하 중 대 ' 내 대 ' 대 ' 핏 天 · ( ) ] 지 다 가 하 하 한 히 가 왔 구 · ( ) ] 지 다 가 했 구 · ( ) ] Vocabulary revision. Translate the words into Tibetan.

homework
monasticcollege
monk
scientist
ordainedperson
future
reporter

Translate the words below into English.

র্বিশাশ ঠিঁশাশা	
ळ:त्रग	
<u> বৃ</u> দ:র্ক্টর্ম্য	
ন্দ্র্র স্মৃন্গ	
AT TAN	
کَمَ»۲۱	
ষ্ট্রনা এমা	

Write down answer to the following questions.

1. हिन् न्दर्गो में नाम में केंदे म सुवाना कम ना कम मेना 2. รุณตา क्रिंद र्र् र्न् र्र् र् र्व् र्य क्रिंग गर्छ र र्या र्य र र्व्या र्य् र्य्ये र्र्यो र र्ये र र्या र्य र र्ये र र्यो र र्ये र र्यो र र हित्र र र्यो र 3. 4. ้สั้น สุขาซี่นาสิ่น เน่นที่ เป็นเกา เสี่น เน่นที่ เล่า เน่นที่ เน่นที่ เน่นที่ เน่นที่ เน่นที่ เน่นที่ เน่นที่ 5. 1. _____ 2. -----3. ------_____ 5

Match the phrases with their meanings.

<u> न्यो'न्येश्वरूपश्वा</u>	memorize
मु :ळ प्येवा	receive a teaching
धेमाळॅन महिंग	become a geshe
ลู้ๆานมาสูกๆ	take an exam
र्बे वहें न रेन	obey the rules
नमें सिन लु	get a good score/grade

Form sentences by using אֶקאון גַאן and שֹׁאן

 <શ'ગઢ્ઠ વસેવ ભુગો ખેંન
 किंन्गीश्वन् क्वेंन्य्दी गीरेन्
 ઽઃૹૼૼૹ੶ૹૣ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૹૢૼૼૼૼૼઽૻૹઽ૾ઽ૾ૼૼ૽ૼ૱૽ૢૼૼઽૼ૾૽ૼ૽૾ૼઌ૽ૼ૿ૺૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૢ

Create appropriate questions by using interrogative pronouns ( $\eta \dot{\tau} \dot{\tau} \eta \dot{\tau}$  etc.).

1	 ૡ૽ૼઽૻૹ૾ૼૻઌૡૻૡૢૡૻૻૡઽૢૻઌૢૻ૾ૡ૱ૣૡ૽ૻૡૼૹૻૹૻ૽ૡૼૹૻૹ૾૽ૡૼૼૻૡ૽૿ૡૼૼૢૡ
2	 हेगर्ना हान रज्यक्रमर्ह्वस्थयन्हा मेंन कुणरक्रथें रयरेन
3	 ઽૹ੶ૹ૽ૼૼ૾ૻૡ૽૾ૺઌ੶ઽઽૻ૾ૢૻ૾ૹઌૻૹૹૡૡ૱ૹૡ૾ૻૡૻૹૡૹૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡૻૻૡૻૻૡ
4	 ^ૹ ેચ ⁻ ચદ ⁻ ૬૮૧ કે વિષ્ણ ગુઃબુ:સેવાચ:૨૨૨૫'વર્ઢેદ-વી'વર્ડવ
5	 ઽ [.] ૡૻૻૢૢ૽ૼૢૢૢૢૻૹૻ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૼૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻૻૡૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻ૾ૡૻૻૡૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ

Rewrite the story by changing all the positive sentences into negative and negative into positive. The first sentence has been done for you as an example.

Example: ત્રંગ્રુ'સ'સેફ જંત્ર'ન્વોંફ'સ'લ' ર્સ્ટેન્ગ્રી સેન્

Look at the pictures and say what the people need/want.




Rewrite the sentences from exercise 7. Use the construction  $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}$ 

Write sentences with the verbs given and धेन् नाईना सेन्दान्हेना.

<i>р</i> )	(র্মুশ)	
	(দহী])	
९)	(ন্দ্র্ক্রিঁশা)	
₹)	(ন্দ্রীবা)	
()	(쵨드')	
ч()	(ই্র্না)	

Change the sentences into 3rd person singular. Also, make the sentences negative. Use جمجة

1) नगामुं विंगाया सेन से से सेन नगी वर्ग	->	آمر
2) ૬ૹ સેંગ્રાયાયર સંલેયા છે લ્વેન છે લ્વેન છે.	->	
3) મ્ૹ મું મું મેરે સમ ર્શ્વે મું મેરે સ્વર્ગ સ્ટ્રેમ સ્ટ્રમ સ્	->	
4) ઽચ'ગલચ'ઝન'લર્નેન'શે'લ્ડ્ગ	->	
5) ૬જ્ઞ વાર્ચ વાર્ચ પ્લેટ કરે છે. ત્ર વા	->	

#### Translate the following text into English and focus on জ্ব্যা

ᠵ᠂য়ঀয়৽ঀ৽ঀৼঀৢয়৽ঀঽ৾৾ঀ৾ৼ৾৾য়ৢ৽ঀঀৢয় ᠵᡝᡈᢅ᠆᠋ᠬ᠈᠙ᡱᡗᢆᡊᡬ᠆ᢆᢧ᠙ᠵᠧᡎ᠌ᡭᡆ᠋᠋᠊ᡆᡃᢍᡄᡃᠼᡃᢩᡆ᠋᠋ᡎᡃᠬ᠋ᢩ᠗ᡧ᠋ᡢ᠋ᡎᢑ᠆ᡥᡅᡭ᠈᠙ᠸᡎ พैत्रात्रायान्त्रात्मार्भेना दवे ڟؚٓٵؚؠ؇ؗۥػڗؘۼڡؾ؈ۣٙ؇ؗۥڝٵؚ؇؞ۜ؇ڎٚڋ؇؞؇ڂڗڞٵ؞ڲٛٳڂڹ؋ؖٵۜ؈ڡ۬ٵ؇ۥؗڂڋٚڗؿؙ؈ٛۺٳڂ؆ڿڗٵ؊ڲۣٙؾٵڲٳٛڂ؞ڝ؞ڡٵڂ؆ڰٞڟۿڟ؆ٞڹۊؙڂؿ <a><br/>
<a></a></a></t<><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a></a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><a><t ๛ฑ่พาฬาร่ารอาหูสารีาพีราหมา สำมาสิกมานก่าตุมามาสิกา อาหาว่ารายาเพาก่าราวา การการการการการการการการการการการการก ลเศพาะท่าติศาธรศพาวรัฐาชิเวรุท อิรารราศิพาศาริ อิราวรัฐาชิเวรุท

Translate the following sentences into Tibetan. Use the phrase Write a short bucket list. Note श्वेरः र्ज्ञेगी.

1. My younger brother wants to become a policeman.

2. I feel like drinking Tibetan tea now.

3. What do yo fool lik - dain

۲.

down six things you would like to do in the future. Use both 🚓 ז', and श्वेद्र त्रें ने to express yourself.

3. What do you feel like doing?	
4. Does Tsering want to go to the main temple with us?	9.
5. I don't feel like studying now.	
	٩
9.	1
•	٠.
ર્વ.	«.
३.	
	Ч.
«.	
4	

## ই্র্মন'র্ক্তব'শৃষ্টিশ্ব'শ্ব Unit two (শ

Correct spelling mistakes. Check your answers with the original text in your textbook.

གམར་འགེད་པ།: ฿ॖๅ་རང་རབ་བྱང་ག་ཞིག་ཡིན་པི་ཆ་ནས་དགོན་པི་ན་འོ་ན་རི་མ་རི་ག་རེད་ག་རིད་ག་རིད་གུརི་རྒྱིད་དགོས་ཀྱི་ོོག

- गर्भराय्योनियाः हिन्दरस्य देरपरणरेयारेयारेयाहराष्ट्रीयी पर्या

Translate the interview into Tibetan. Try not to look at the original text in your textbook on p63.

Reporter	:	As a student, what do you have to do in school?
Tsomo	:	As a student I have to obey the school rules. Likewise, I have to attend the classes and write homework. I must get a good score on my exams, too.
Reporter	:	What do you want to do in the future?
Tsomo	:	I want to become a good scientist. Also, I want to go to many places in the world and be beneficial to the
		Tibetan society.
~~		
গ্রাম্ব-প্র্যান্	51	
মর্ক্ট র্মা		

(৲) Unit two র্ইনি'র্ক্র'শট্টিশ্ব'শ্ব

Translate into English.

ૹ૾ૢૡ઼ૻૹૹૼૼૼૼૡૢૻૹૻૹૢ૾ૹૢ૾ૡૻૹ૾૾ૡૢૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻ૱૽૽ઌ૽૿ૡૻ૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૺૡૻ૽ૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ૽ૻૡ	
ફેનુ સ્ટ વીચ સેનુ વાલય વાર્કેટ શુન છે. ^{જી} ન સ્થા	
ૹ૨ [੶] ଽ ^୲ ૡઞ૨ [੶] ઽૢૹ  ઙૣૻૢ૽ૡૢૻૻઌૻૺૼૼૹૻૡ૽ૢૺ૾ૡૻૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻઌૻૻૹ૽ૻૼૼૼૼૻૡ૽ૼૼૻ૱ઌ૽૿ૢૺૻૹૻઽ૽ૺઽૢૺ	
ત્ર૱ઽ [.] ૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૻૻૡૼૹૣૢૻઽૻઌૡૢઽૻૡૢ૱૽ઌ૽ૢ૽૽ઽૺઽૻઌૹૣ	
ઽૹ ^ۥ ૡ૾ૻ [੶] ૼૼૼૼૻ૱ૢ૱૽ૺ૽ૢ૾ૺ૱ૺૢ	
ઽ૽ૡ૾ૺ [੶] ૹ ^ۥ ૡઽ [੶] ઐૣ૾ૹૻૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૻૡૢૻૡૡૢઽ૾ૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌ૽ૻઌ૽ૢ૿૽ૻઽ૽ૺૼૢૣ	

Put the words in correct order.

1.	ಶ್ರਿಷ ಷಹಿತ / २वे / ग्रे / मुन ग्रे का रेन्य / मुन का / मुन का	
2.	ૹૢ૾ઽૻ૬ૺ૨ૻૼ૾ૼૺ૾ૡૼ૱ૺૺૺ૾૾ૼ૱૱૾ૺ૱૽૽ૼ૱૱૽ૺ૱૾ૺ૱૾ૺ૱	
3.	ग्रह्य विंग् / म्रुन ग्रे से पर्नु म् / म् में में / प्रेने क्य / प्ये / प्ये के क्य / प्ये	
4.	૬:/ૹ઼઼૾ૣૣਗ਼:/ૢ૽૱ૢઽઽઽ:/ગૢૢૢૢૼઽૼ/ક્રૣ૱ૹ૽૾ૢૺૡઽૢૣਗ਼:/ગૄ૾૾૾૱ૢૺ૾૾ૡ	
5.	ઽૠ૽ૻૹૻૻ૾ૺૡ૾૿૱ૻૡ૽ૻૼૡૼૻૡૺૼૡૻૻૡૼૻૻૡ૽ૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻૻઌૻ	
6.	ગુજા/સુ/નક્રુવ વ્લેવ/શુન છે/ ત્વે/અત્તેન	

Write 5 sentences about what you can do at home.

Write down the rules for employing particles ਗੁਤਾਘਤਾਕਤਾ.

word ending:	particles
	IJ۲.
	थान्.
	۹۲.

ই্র্মিন'র্ক্তব'শন্টিশ্য'শা	Unit two	(5)

Correct the mistakes: ಪ್ರನಾಜನಾಗ್ರ	기 Fill in the blanks with correct particles 코드·╙드·འ드·
<ol> <li>મ્ટ્રાય્સ્સોંગો મેંગ્ર</li> <li>બ્વૉમ સાસ દેવા વસ્ય સહે સાંગ્ર વર્ડવા</li> <li>વર્ચ માંગ્ર સાંગ્ર વ્યુપ્ત સાંગ્ર વ્યુપ્ત સાંગ્ર વ્યુપ્ત સાંગ્ર વ્યુપ્ત સાંગ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ્ર પ</li></ol>	শী Fill in the blanks with correct particles য়ৢয়ড়য়য়য়য় ৢঀ৾ঀৢ৾ঀ৾৾য় ঀ৾৾য়৾ঀ৾৾য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়
१ ३	
<b>ح</b> . ۲.	What words are the words with दु [.] derived from? Write their translation, too.
( _.	१. गृहु
عا. ۲.	१. हिंदु
¢	<ul> <li>२. याउ</li> <li>८. याउ</li> </ul>
/∼.	५. लेहु

Write the rules for employing લેન્જેન્જેન્જેન્જ

Which of the particles छेन्द्वेन्द्वेन्द्र are not used

correctly?

Fill in the blanks with suitable words.



(四)

Match the first part of sentences in column  $\P$  with the second part in column  $\P.$ 

(찌)

1 ફ્રેંવ [:] ફેંગ સુન બેન ક્રોં સુન ગરેના	 Àस्रस्य:म्यन्याय:विन्तः व्र:क्व:म्या:केन्य	<b>দ্</b> রন্থ নার্মিনা ব ম মহন্যা
2 বিশ্ববাদেই উৎ ই শিশ বিদ্বা	 मःधुमाद्ददांदीतः द्विसामाप्रद्यींदितः	র্ম্রন:র্ন্টুন:র্হুন] মদম:ক্রুম:রুন্য
3 ಹરુ.સ.હુન્ય.લુન્.જુ.સૂંગ.ફુંગ	 དཀའ་ལ་ས་རྒྱག་ଓིང་ སོོམ་གྲུར་འགོོ་ཕོན་	क्षेग'ळु'गोर्हेन्। खुर्थ'य्वस्थ'नने।
4 એ ફેંગ અન્બેન વિન્યુયના અદેશ્ય	 वृत्तः क्रें सः क्षेतिः वित्तायाः वित्ताः केताः	ङ'न्पन'र्हे। ना८ ⁻ र्दे: ५ेन्दा
5 ক্রু'অর্ক্ট'ক্ট'উদ'বাঝিদ'ড়'অদ'।	 What are you going to do in th	ne fall? Write five
6 ઐન-ર્ચે્ન-સેન્-બેન-બેં-અ-ક્રો	 sentences using the constructio	I
7 ळॅंद्र'नज्जुरू'वित्त'वत्त'ग'पद्मे।	 <i>9</i>	
8 ફ્રેંપ્લંગ્લે સ્વાલેપક્તું છે વારેલુ	 त.	
9 ફ નર્લેન છેન શું ભાવનેંના	 e.	
10 तमामामादसुराजेताकुतारेतालावर्षे	 ч	

# র্ষ্রিন'র্ক্তর'শৃষ্টিশ'শ। Unit two (5)

Use the words in the brackets and answer the questions in negative. Follow the example:

নশ্	ૡ૾ૺૹૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૻૻૡૻૻૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૽ૼૼૼૻૡૼૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡૻ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૾૾ૼૡૼૺૼૻ૾૾ૻૡ૽ૼૼૼૼૼ૾૾ૼૡૼ૾ૻૡ૽ૼૼૡૻૻ૾૽ૼૡૻ૾ૼૡૻૻ૾ૼૡૻ	^૨ ૨૮૬૫ નગ્રઃબેશ <b>ઃબ</b> ર્કે.૫૮.૯૨૧૫
1.	ૹૣૼૼૡ੶૱੶૬૮੶ਜ਼ੑਫ਼੶ਜ਼੶ਸ਼ਫ਼ਫ਼੶ਸ਼੶ਖ਼ਫ਼ਫ਼੶ਸ਼ੑੑਫ਼੶੶ਫ਼ਜ਼ਗ਼੶ਖ਼ੑਗ਼੶ਸ਼ੑਗ਼ੑ੶ਖ਼ੑੑਗ਼੶ਸ਼ੑਗ਼ੑ੶ਸ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼ੑਗ਼	
2.	য়ৢ৾৾ঀ৾ৼৼ৾৽ৼ৾য়৾য়৾৽ড়৾য়৾৽ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾য়৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾ঀ৾৾৽ড়৾৾য়৾৾ঀ৾৽ড়৾৾য়৾	
3.	ૢ૾ૺ૱ૻૠૢૢૼૡૼૡ૱ૡૢૻૡૻૻૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૼૻ૽ૼૼૼૡૼૡૼૡૻૻ૾ૻૡૼૼૡૻૻૼૡૼૡ૾ૻૼૡૼૼ૾ૣૻૡૼૼૼ૾ૣૼૺ૾૾ૺ	
4.	<u> </u>	
5.	<u>য়৾৾</u> ঀৼয়৾ঀ৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾	
6.	৻য়৸ড়৾য়৾৾৻ড়৾৾য়৾৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾	

Choose one of the words given to fill in the blanks. Make sure the sentences make sense.

१ ईःभिन्दन्दसः केंगाद्वस्रसः वर्षो	૱ૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱ઌૻૺૢૼૻૡૻૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૢ	<u>F</u>	معمم	ন্য
૧ તૃષ્ય અભર સુવેત્વ સંસેન્ વશ્વ	য়য়৽ঽঀ৾৾৽ঽ৾৽ঽ৾৾৾ৼৢ৾৾ৼয়৽ঀ৾৾ঽ৾৾৽ঀৢ৾৾ৼ৾ঀ	র্বিস:ধ্যুন্য	ক্রীন্দ্র বিদ্রা	ষ্ট্ৰ ক্লিবাশা
ૠ વિંત્ર સુવા ઢંદ સાવ દેવા વડા સે તા છે શ	૿૽ઌઽૹૢ૽ઽ૽ૼૼ૱ૼઌૻૼૼૼૼૼ	a star	দিন্হ্য	শ্দশ
< রিন'ম্থম'র্কন:ইশ্ব	গ্ন	ন্শান্ত:না	শ্ভূন্য:মাঁ	1 1 1 1 1 1
< ব্যার শের ^{রেন্} নাউ নাশী রব র শার্ত গার্ক বার্ক বি	विरुष्टे भेषित्	ه	শ্রন্থা	নর্মন্য
< ૡૢૢઽૻૹઽૻૡૻૺૼ૽ૼૹૄૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻૢ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡ૽ૻઌ૽૿ૡૻ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻઙ૽ૼૻઙૣૼૺૻ૾ઌ૿ૻૻૼૻૼૼૻ૽ૼૻ૽ૼૡૻ૽ૼૹ	য়ঢ়ેંદ સુરુ છે જેવા	শ্ব্বম'শ্ৰু	র্শ্বনা:হী	র্মি শ্যা

 $_{\mathbb{T}}$  Match the feelings with pictures.



_____

_____

 $\square$  Write short sentences with the feelings from exercise  $\neg$ .

_____

_____

### শারমাশান্দীমাশান্দরান্দের বি

Describe the weather by writing short sentences under each picture.





-----

### Answer key Lesson 4

617	র্ষ্রিদ'নতর্জ্বশ্ববি'এল্লেন্ডা'র্ম্মি' Songtsen Gampo's year of birth (Songtsen Gampo is the 33rd king of Tibet, considered as the Founder of the nation. He also brought Buddhism to Tibet).
821/822	ਗ਼ੁ ਸੇਂਤ ਕੇ 'ਕਤ अ' ਗ਼ੇ 'ਛੇ इस 'भेग 'वलग 'वले ' में। Tibetan Kingdom and Chinese Kingdom reached a truce. Three pillars were put up at three different places saying "Tibetan people happy in Tibet and Chinese people happy in China." One of them can still be seen in Lhasa. The borders of each countries were set at that time, as well.
1357	ਵે ^{ર્} ઉત્તાવગ્રત્થ વ્યાપ્ત Je Tsongkhapa's year of birth
1642	নশন্শ্ৰন ই ^{ন্} মন্দশী শাল্ডন স্তু শাশ ইন্ The year of establishment of Ganden Phodrang (the previous Tibetan gov- ernment)
1959	શુ 'ન્ચર'શેુચ'ર્ચેન્'નર્જ્ય વદ્દવાગુચાયલે વેંગે Chinese invasion in Tibet.
1989	[∞] ર્વે∣ેર'શ'શ્રર્ळેવા'ચ'ર્વે,ર'વેચ'લે'ગરે'વોવેરશ'ર્કવાશ'ર્વેગ્યવે'ર્થે∣ HH the Dalai Lama was awarded the Noble Peace Prize.